





Copyright © 1991 GO Corporation. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form by any means without the written permission of GO Corporation, 950 Tower Lane, Suite 1400, Foster City, CA 94404.

Printed in the United States of America.

Your license agreement with GO Corporation, which is included with the product, specifies the permitted and prohibited uses of the PenPoint[™] operating system. Any unauthorized duplication or use of the PenPoint operating system in whole or in part is forbidden. Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of GO Corporation.

GO, the GO logo, PenPoint, the PenPoint logo, and First Experience are trademarks of GO Corporation.

Words are checked against the 77,000 word Proximity/Merriam-Webster Linguibase, © 1983 Merriam-Webster. © 1983. All rights reserved, Proximity Technology, Inc. The spelling portion of this product is based on spelling and thesaurus technology from Franklin Electronic Publishers. All other products or services mentioned in this document are identified by the trademarks or service marks of their respective companies or organizations.

Warranty Disclaimer and Limitiation of Liability

GO Corporation makes no warranties, express or implied, including without limitation the implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and noninfringement, regarding PenPoint software or anything else. GO Corporation does not warrant, guarantee, or make any representations regarding the use or the results of the use of the PenPoint software or other products or documentation in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, currentness, or otherwise. The entire risk as to the results and performance of the PenPoint software or other products or documentation is assumed by you. The exclusion of implied warranties is not permitted by some states. Therefore, the above exclusion may not apply to you.

In no event will GO Corporation, its directors, officers, employees, or agents be liable to you for any consequential, incidental, or indirect damages (including damages for loss of business profits, business interruption, loss of business information, cost of procurement of substitute goods or technology, and the like) arising out of the use of or inability to use the PenPoint software or other products or documentation or defects therein even if GO Corporation has been advised of the possiblity of such damages, whether under theory of contract, tort (including negligence), products liability, or otherwise. Because some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of liability for consequential or incidental damages, the above limitations may not apply to you. GO Corporation's liability to you for actual damages from any cause whatsoever, and regardless of the form of the action (whether in contract, tort (including negligence), product liability or otherwise), will be limited to \$50.

Note

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual may cause harmful interference to radio communciations. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his or her own expense.

CONTRIBUTORS

Todd Agulnick Bonnie Albin Roland Alden Fannie Allen Josh Axelrod Celeste Baranski Steve Bartlett Simon Bate Sandy Benett John Bennett Sharin Blair Arnold Blinn Joe Bosurgi Murray Bowles Carol Broadbent Alex Brown Howard Brunnings Kurt Buecheler Robert Carr Chia Lun Chang David Chavez Ratha Chea Mark Cogdill John Croll **Richard Dickson** Kevin Doren Gary Downing Celeste Dunn Jim Floyd Dan Fraisl Mike Freedman John Garrett Alex Gerson Ken Guzik Paul Hammel Greg Heumann Iune Hirai

Deborah Hodge Tony Hoeber Greg Hullender Steve Isaac Jerry Kaplan Merri-Lynn Kubota Roy Kumar Ilona Leale Mark Lentczner Charlie Leu Debra Levesque Dan'l Lewin Kris Lincicome David Low Pete Ma Arjen Maarleveld Henry Madden Cary Masatsugu Holli Maxwell Janet McCandless Devin McKinney Carl Meyer George Mills Dana Mitchell Robert Moncrieff Ravi Naravanan Lisa Oatman Alex Osborne Mike Ouye S Page Michael Papp Grace Pariante Craig Payne John Russell Mark Sapsford Steve Schoettler Bruce Schwartz

Mike Schwartz David Serna Danny Shader **Robbie Shepard** Ed Soloko Peter Stahl Peggy Stok Craig Taylor Sue Toeniskoetter **Bob** Vallone Doug van Duyne Joe Vierra Tim Wiegman Rick Wolfe Phil Ydens Eddie Yee Peter Yorgin John Zussman

Special thanks to . . .

Maurice Balick Pam Barringer Ianis Baron Janet Beech Timothy Bishop Joel Borden Brendan Boyle **Bill Bradley** Paul Bradley Steve Brown Diana Bury Steve Chernicoff Paul Cutt Vali Desmond Cary Duncan **Bill Evans**

Chris Glazek Steven Hales Tom Hall Mimi Hathaway Lynn Henry Madeleine Kahn Susan Kare Donna Kelley Ira Kleinberg Henry Korman Gary Lang Tom Lindsev Chris Metcalfe Mike McGeov Keith McCandless Marie Moreland Signe Ostby Andrew Osterman Dan Petri **Jonathan** Price Paul Quin Wes Richards Pat Rogondino Jon Ruppert Fred Russo Alan Saichek Craig Sampson Nancy Schoendorf Herb Schueneman Greg Stikeleather Mike Stone Amir Toussi Cynthia Vincent Anne Westbrook Ellinor Wheeler **Richard Wineapple** Patti Zussman

Contents

CHAPTER 1 / 1 How to Use This Book

Using Procedures / 2

CHAPTER 2 / 5

Fundamentals

Documents in the Notebook / 8

Giving Commands with Gestures and Menus / 10

Making a Selection / 12

Working with Notebook Objects / 13

Dismissing an Object / 13 Moving a Notebook Object / 14 Making an Object Bigger or Smaller / 15

Seeing What's on the Bookshelf / 16

Help / 16 Preferences / 17 Tools / 18 Stationery / 20 Disks / 20 Keyboard / 21 Installer / 21 In Box and Out Box / 22

Using Option and Dialog Sheets / 23

Displaying Option Sheets / 24 Choosing Options / 25 Using Dialog Sheets / 27

Copying and Moving Notebook Objects / 28

Getting Help / 30

Getting Quick Help / 30 Using the Help Notebook / 31

<u>CHAPTER 3 / 33</u>



Using Gestures / 34 Using Gesture Profiles / 35

PenPoint Gestures / 36

CHAPTER 4 / 65 Installing Applications and Devices

Finding Out What's Installed in the Notebook / 67

Installing an Application or Utility from Disk / 68 Automatic Installation / 70

Creating Personalized Versions of Utilities / 71

Saving Your Changes / 74

Deactivating Applications and Utilities / 76 Deactivating Fonts / 77

Changing the Home Volume / 78

Setting Up Printers / 79 Connecting a Printer / 79 Setting Printer Options / 81 Printing a Document / 82

CHAPTER 5 / 83 Creating and Using Documents

Using the Create Menu to Create a Document / 85

Using the Stationery Notebook to Create a Document / 87

Adding Stationery to the Create Menu / 88

Creating Stationery / 89 Creating Customized Stationery / 89

Managing the Stationery Notebook / 91 Deleting or Purging Stationery / 92

Scrolling a Document / 93

Floating a Document / 97

Moving and Resizing Floating Documents / 99

Zooming a Document / 100

Using Documents / 102 Renaming a Document / 102 Saving and Deleting Documents / 104

Embedding a New Document / 105

Embedding an Existing Document / 106 Embedding a Tool / 106

Working with Embedded Documents / 107

Setting Document Options / 107 Moving an Embedded Document / 107 Making an Embedded Document a Full-page Document / 107 Floating an Embedded Document / 108 Printing an Embedded Document / 109

Using the Cork Margin / 111

Customizing a Document / 113

<u>CHAPTER 6 / 115</u>

Writing in the Notebook

Learning to Write on the Computer Screen / 116

Printing in Writing Pads / 117

Some Tips on Writing in Pads / 119 Printing in Upper Case / 121

Translating Your Handwriting / 122

Correcting the Translation / 124

Correcting the Translation in the Writing Pad / 124 Correcting the Translation with the Proof Sheet / 125 Getting a Writing Pad / 126

Choosing a Writing Pad Style / 128 Choosing Boxed Pads / 128 Choosing a Ruled Pad / 129 Choosing a Ruled-Boxed Pad / 131 Choosing a Writing Pad Size and Shape / 133

Using a Keyboard to Write / 134 Typing Text Directly onto the Page / 134 Correcting Text in the Writing Pad by Typing / 135

Customizing Your Handwriting / 136

Using a Customization Set / 138 Analyzing Your Progress / 140 Accommodating Multiple Users / 141

CHAPTER 7 / 143

Editing and Formatting Text

Selecting Text / 144

Editing Text / 146 Adding Text / 147 Deleting Text / 148 Inserting Spaces in Text / 148 Editing Text in Edit Pads / 149 Editing Text in Labels and Document Titles / 150 Editing Text in Fields / 150

Moving and Copying Text / 152

Moving Text / 152 Copying Text / 153

Styling Text / 154 Styling Text Directly / 154 Styling Text with Text Option Sheets / 156

Formatting Text / 157

Setting Margins / 157 Changing Line Spacing / 158 Positioning Text / 159 Setting Tab Stops / 160 Starting a New Line, Paragraph, or Page / 161 Copying a Format or Style / 162

USING PENPOINT

Viewing Text / 163 Viewing Text / 163 Magnifying the Text / 164

Checking Your Spelling / 165 Adding a Word to the Dictionary / 166

Adding your Signature to a Document / 167

CHAPTER 8 / 169

Finding and Replacing Text

Finding Text / 170

Replacing Text / 171

Defining The Search / 173 Setting the Search Range and Direction / 173 Refining the Search / 175

CHAPTER 9 / 177 Managing the Notebook

Seeing What's in Your Notebook / 179

Finding Out More about a Document / 180

Using the Show menu / 180 Using the Document Option Sheets / 181

Sorting the Table of Contents / 182

Rearranging the Notebook / 183 Moving Pages / 183

Grouping Documents into Sections / 184

Creating a Section / 184 Moving a Document into a Section / 185 Creating a Subsection / 186 Creating Multiple Notebooks / 186

Turning to a Page / 187

Using Notebook Tabs to Mark Pages / 189

Attaching and Deleting Notebook Tabs / 189 Attaching Several Notebook Tabs / 190 Displaying Notebook Tabs / 191

Using Hyperlink Buttons to Move between Pages / 192

Setting Preferences / 194

Setting the Time / 195 Setting the Date / 196 Setting the Response Time / 196 Using the Auto Shut Off Option / 197 Turning On the Warning Beep / 197 Choosing PenPoint Fonts and Field Fonts / 198 Choosing a Screen Layout / 199

Moving Items on the Bookshelf / 200

Customizing the Help Notebook / 201

Using the Clock / 202 Changing the Display / 203 Setting the Alarm / 204

CHAPTER 10 / 205 Printing, Sending, and Receiving Documents

Printing a Document / 207 Choosing a Page Layout / 207 Adding Headers and Footers / 208 Printing a Document / 209 Printing from the Out Box / 211 Printing Embedded Documents / 211

Sending and Receiving Documents / 213

Filing Documents

Using The Disk Manager / 218

Finding Out More About What's on a Disk / 221 Creating New Directories / 222 Renaming a Disk and its Documents / 223 Deleting Documents from the Disk Manager / 223 Creating Disk Manager Stationery / 223

Transferring Documents / 224

Transferring Documents and Sections to and from the Notebook / 224 Transferring Documents Between Disks / 226

Copying and Duplicating Disks / 228

Converting a PenPoint Document to a PC Format / 230

Converting a PC Document to a PenPoint Document / 233

Formatting a Floppy Disk / 235

Saving Documents / 236

Backing Up Your Notebook / 237 Restoring Your Notebook / 238

CHAPTER 12 / 241

Learning More About PenPoint

Managing Memory / 242

Finding Out How Much Memory Something Uses / 242

Things You Can Safely Delete or Deactivate / 243 Other Ways to Use Memory Efficiently / 243 When You Get an Out of Memory Message / 244

Restarting PenPoint When a Document Freezes / 245

Booting PenPoint When PenPoint Freezes / 246

Accommodating Multiple Users / 247

Creating Individual Notebooks / 247

Tips on Navigating and Using Documents / 249

Turning the Table of Contents into a Control Panel / 249 Creating a Customized Index / 251

CHAPTER 13 / 253 Setting Up Your Computer

Recharging the Battery / 255 Using the GO Travel Charger / 256 Using the GO Quick Charger / 257

Replacing the Battery / 258 Removing a Battery / 258 Installing a Battery / 259

Connecting to a Printer / 260

Connecting Directly to a Serial Printer / 260 Serial Printer Connectors And Adapters / 261 Connecting to a Serial Printer Through the GO Quick Charger / 262

Using a GO Floppy Drive / 263

Connecting a GO Floppy Drive through the GO Quick Charger / 263 Connecting Directly to a Disk Drive / 264

Using Floppy Disks / 265

Manually Ejecting a Disk from the GO Floppy Drive / 266

Using a Hard Drive / 267

Connecting to a PC / 268

Connecting Directly to a TOPS FlashCard / 269 Connecting to a TOPS FlashCard through the GO Quick Charger / 270

Using Option Cartridges / 271

Connecting A Keyboard / 272

Caring For Your GO Computer / 273

HARDWARE APPENDIX / 275 GLOSSARY / 281 INDEX / 287



Using PenPoint explains how to work with your PenPoint computer. Each chapter covers some aspect of working with the PenPoint[™] operating system—creating documents, writing in the Notebook, copying documents to disk, or setting up the computer. The chapters themselves are broken up into **procedures**. Each procedure details the steps to accomplishing a specific task, such as editing text in fields, using Handwriting Customization, or installing an application.

The chapter introduction gives you a framework for understanding the procedures it contains. Each procedure gives you step-by-step instructions and shows you what you'll see on screen when you do the steps.

Using Procedures

For example, here's the procedure for using this book. It has a brief introduction followed by an illustration with several steps.



- 1 Use the book's table of contents to find a specific task, such as how to rename a document.
 - When you look up the procedure you'll see a picture next to the steps. The picture illustrates your actions and the results you'll see on the screen.
 - Text preceded by a triangle like this one tells you more about the step above.

 Leader lines often link a specific step to the appropriate part of the illustration.

If we want to draw your attention to an important piece of information, we put it in a note like this one.



- 2 The procedure for renaming a document has steps like this: Draw a circle over the title to display an edit pad and change it there.
 - ▲ The illustration shows both the circle o over the title and the result: the edit pad. Every time we tell you to use a gesture (such as a circle) we illustrate that gesture: o.
 - The sample documents that we use in these screen illustrations are not all included in the Samples section on your computer.
- **3** When you need more information about drawing gestures, or about where they'll work, see chapter 3, Drawing Gestures.
 - You'll find a gesture profile for each gesture (arranged alphabetically), and some tables that divide the gestures into logical groups.
- **4** Procedures are grouped by topic, so if you want to know more about a task, look at the other procedures in that section or chapter.

You'll often draw gestures when you're following the steps in a procedure. Other basic skills include choosing commands from menus, working with option and dialog sheets, and using items on the Bookshelf. Read chapter 2, Fundamentals to learn about them before you go on to use the individual procedures in the rest of this book.

> You'll also see notes like this one referring you to related information in other parts of the book.

CHAPTER 2



The PenPoint[™] operating system organizes information you keep in the computer in a Notebook. When you turn the computer on you'll see a page of the Notebook. At the bottom of the screen is a Bookshelf which contains tools that are useful when you're working with documents. They're represented by icons (small pictures).



The first page of the Notebook is the **Table of Contents** which lists every document and **section**. To turn to a document directly, you tap)—lightly touch—its **page number** or its **tab** with the **GO pen**. An icon next to each title tells you the type of document it is, in other words which **application** was used to create it.

You use the pen to write in the Notebook and to tell PenPoint what you want to do next—create a new document, copy a paragraph to another page, or edit text, for example. To do any of these things you can either choose a **command** from a **menu** or draw a **gesture** (a symbol or letter) on the screen.

The procedures in this book tell you which gesture or menu command to use to accomplish a given task. If it's a gesture, you'll see the name of the gesture and its symbol (tap r) and, if it's a menu choice, the name of the command and the menu it's on. Chapter 3, Drawing Gestures shows you how to draw each gesture and tells you what it does.

Documents in the Notebook

Each page of the Notebook contains a different document. You can have as many pages in the Notebook as you want (up to the amount of available memory).



A document can be longer than what you see on the screen.

To bring the hidden part into view you scroll the document.

You can find details in "Scrolling a Document" in chapter 5 (Creating and Using Documents).

FUNDAMENTALS

DOCUMENTS IN THE NOTEBOOK

No te boo k: Conteints		
Document Edit Create View Show Sort		
Name.	Page 57 -	— Tap) the Contents tab to see the
Current Products	2	Table of Contents for the entire
🖹 Inventory		Notebook.
Stand ard Order Form		
Proposed New Products	5 2	— Section titles are in bold.
New Product Ide as	6	
	7 🕄	
🗎 Chili Mixes		
C Sals		
		section, double tap ; the section
Chain Stores	18 🗧	title.
🔄 🗎 Complaints to Acton	14 2	▲ Double tap it again to hide the
U'New Bottle Design		titles
∐ Salsa/Condiments	16 8	tities.
Package Design Letter		Decument titles are plain
Proposed New Design (3/2/91)		Document titles are plant.
Bettle Design Sketch	1945-19	— ▲ The document's page number.
Chevised Bottle FAX		The document icon which shows
	·····21 (≮ ₽	what type of application you used
New Product Dratt		to arosto the document
	Pe se	to create the document.
	3 N	To turn to a document:
	A STATE OF A	
		▲ Tap either its page number or its
	- - -	icon.
		▲ You can also turn to it by
		tapping 🕨 its tab, if it has one.
2 ✓ 10 1 1 ≦	_* & ≜	11 U V
Help Preterences Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard	Installer in Out	

You can find out how to make the tap . and double tap . gestures by reading chapter 3, Drawing Gestures.

Giving Commands with Gestures and Menus

There are two ways to tell PenPoint what you want to do next: choose a menu command or draw a gesture (a symbol or letter) on the screen. Generally, each menu item has an equivalent gesture. For example, to delete a word you can choose **Delete** from the Edit menu or cross it out χ .

	N Pe	ckage Design Letter 🛛 💎 🏷
Docume nt	Eght Insert	Case Format
Dear Ms. H	Undo Select All	1
We need a our condin	Anticipate Alternational Alternational Alternational	n for the overxzed plastic bottles for
Recently, s of our sam our line. H his son ran	Find Spell	re of a supermarket chain took a box in order to try them before ordering ft the box on the kitchen floor where h a tricycle.

When you work with the documents in your Notebook, you:

Choose menu commands. To do so:

▲ Tap ≯ a menu name to open it and see its choices.

Dimmed commands are currently unavailable.

▲ Tap ▶ again to choose a command.

To close the menu without choosing a command, tap anywhere outside it.

Draw **gestures**. For example, to delete a word, you draw a cross out gesture χ on it.

Some applications may add commands and gestures to those described in this guide. Check the application guide for more information.

GIVING COMMANDS WITH GESTURES AND MENUS

Chapter 3, Drawing Gestures, shows you how to draw each gesture and tells you where it's used. The gesture profile for cross out is shown below.



Cross Out Deletes a word or selection in text, or any object directly beneath the $\boldsymbol{X}.$



What Works

Make an X using two distinct strokes (top to bottom) over the selection or object that you want to delete.

- 1 Draw the first stroke; barely lift the pen from the screen
- **2** Quickly draw the second stroke.

What Doesn't Work

Drawing the gesture in one stroke (connecting the two lines).

Drawing strokes that are not clean lines.

Making a + instead of an X.

Where It Works

Deletes the contents of a field, documents from the Table of Contents, and icons from the Bookshelf. When you draw it over a document's title line, it deletes the document. When you draw it over a disk icon or disk name in the Disk Manager, it ejects the disk.

If you draw a gesture and PenPoint doesn't recognize it, you see a starburst where you drew it. If you draw a gesture that PenPoint recognizes, but it doesn't work where you used it, you see a series of concentric circles followed by a starburst.

When you choose a command or draw a gesture, PenPoint lets you know it's carrying out the instruction by giving you visual feedback. For example, when you tap **)** the **page turn arrow**, it darkens while the page is turning.

If carrying out the command takes more than an instant, you see a **busy clock** during the process. For example, when you tap y an icon on the Bookshelf, the busy clock appears.

Making a Selection

You often need to specify what you want a command to affect before you give that command. You do this by selecting the object. For example, you select a document in the Table of Contents before you tell PenPoint to print it.

When you select something it looks different; usually it gets highlighted. For example, if you select a word by double tapping . it, the background behind the word turns gray, highlighting it.

TNUER	book: Contents	<
cument Edit Create Vie	w Show Sort	
ame		Page
Read Me First	and the second sec	2
First Experience		
Samples		4
New Productildeas		5
📋 Package Design Lette	9 r	
Package	e Design Letter	6
Document Edit Insert C	ase Format	
	19271 Palm Los Augeles, CA February 17	B1vd. 90036 , 1991
Vls. Elena Huerta	and the second second	
FastPak Design		Lenge
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St.	TextOptions Che	aracter
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321	TextOptions + Cha	aracter
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig	TextOptions > Cha Font: > Roman (U	aracter RW)
^T astPak Design 3535 Mission St Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig	TextOptions → Cha Font: → Roman (U Size: → 12 State: → 12	aracter RW)
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig Dear Ms, Huerta	TextOptions → Cha Font: → Roman (U Size: → 12 Style: ✓ Bold Italic	aracter RW)
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig Dear Ms. Huerta:	TextOptions → Cha Font: → Roman (U Size: → 12 Style: → Bod Italic Small Cap	aracter RW)
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321 RE: New package desig Dear Ms. Huerta: We need a new design 1	TextOptions → Cha Font: → Roman (U Size: → 12 Style: → Bold Italic Small Cap Strike -thru Underline	aracter RW)
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig Dear Ms. Huerta: We need a new design i condiments.	TextOptions → Cha Font: → Roman (U Size: → 12 Style: ✓ Bold Italic Small Cap Strike-thru Underline Heavy Un	aracter RW) ss
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig Dear Ms. Huerta: We need a new design : condiments. Recently, an executive	TextOptions) Cha Font:) Roman (U Size:) 12 Style: Bold Italic Small Cap Strike -thru Underline Heavy Un- Hidden	aracter RW) s
FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321 RE : New package desig Dear Ms. Huerta: We need a new design : condiments. Recently, an executive a box of our samples ho	TextOptions) Cha Font:) Roman (U Size:) 12 Style: V Bold Italic Small Cap Strike-thru Underline Heavy Un Hidden	aracter RW) ss derline

To make a selection go away, you deselect it, usually by tapping it.

To select a title on the Table of Contents, tap \rightarrow it.

▲ Tap it again to deselect it.

To select a word, double tap **y** it.

▲ Tap it to deselect it.

To select a choice from a multiple check list (a list with double lines next to it), tap **)** it.

▲ Tap it again to deselect it.

To find out how to select text, read "Selecting Text" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

Working with Notebook Objects

As you work with documents, you often use Notebook objects, such as items on the Bookshelf, and option and dialog sheets. If any of these hides part of the page you want to see, you can move, resize, or dismiss it.

To see the contents of an item on the Bookshelf, tap ightharpoondown its icon. To use a dialog or option sheet, you choose the appropriate menu command or draw a gesture. (Read "Using Dialog and Option Sheets" in this chapter for more details.)

Dismissing an Object

When you're finished looking at or using a Bookshelf item or option or dialog sheet, you can dismiss it.



If it has a button:

Tap ▶ the button labeled **Close** or **Cancel**. This closes the item without changing anything.

If it has a **close corner** (a triangle in the upper left corner):

Tap **)** the close corner.

WORKING WITH NOTEBOOK OBJECTS

Moving a Notebook Object

If an object obscures part of the page you want to see, you can move it to a more convenient location on the screen by dragging the title line.

/	Proposed New Design (3/2	2,91)		<17>
Document Edit	Insert Case Format			
Mr. Richard Ho New World Foo 19271 Palm Bl Los Angeles, C	opkins ods vd. A 90036			Ŷ
RE: New packs	Stationer: Cor	nte rits	<1>	
Dear Mr. Hopl I've received of the New World common resin, is recyclable, li resistance goal, advantage of gi	Name MiniText Business Memo Drawing Paper Drawing Paper FaxViewer Fax Letter Bottle Design Sketch	Page 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 9 10		Contents

To move an object:

- Press > the title (touch the pen firmly to the screen) and hold it there. Wait until the border turns dark to tell you it's ready to be moved.
- **2** Then, without lifting the pen, drag the item to its new location.
- **3** Lift the pen to complete the move.

WORKING WITH NOTEBOOK OBJECTS

Making an Object Bigger or Smaller

Notebook objects have handles that you can drag to expand or reduce your view of their contents. Some, such as option sheets, have only one handle at the bottom; others, such as the Stationery notebook, have both a bottom and corner handle.

If it has a corner handle:

Name	Page.	Menu	Ŷ
MiniText		States and a Constant	
🖹 MiniText			Co m
Business	4		ents
🗋 Memo	5		F
Drawing Paper			
🚯 Drawing Paper	7	۵	1.

Press > the handle with the pen. You see an outline surrounding the handle, telling you it's ready to be resized.

- **2** Without lifting the pen, drag the handle to the right to widen it, down to lengthen it, or diagonally to increase it in both directions.
 - ▲ Do the reverse to make it smaller.

Font:	Roman (URW)
Size:	• 12
Style:	Bold Italic Small Caps Strike -thru Unde rline He avy Underline Hidden

If it has a bottom handle:

- Press > the handle with the pen. You see an outline surrounding the handle telling you it's ready to be resized.
- 2 Without lifting the pen, drag the handle down to lengthen the object, or up to shorten it.

When you resize an object, sometimes the information no longer fits within the borders. To bring hidden information into view, scroll the page by drawing a flick up l on the page or by tapping r the scroll arrows in the scroll margin. You can find a detailed explanation of scrolling in chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents.

lo nte nts

Samp

Seeing What's on the Bookshelf

The Bookshelf at the bottom of the screen holds tools and notebooks that you use for tasks such as creating new documents, choosing preferences, and installing applications.

Contraction of the second second second					
		and the second s	CODE STREET, ST	-7.	and the second s
				and the second sec	
	1 SEL 5		200		
Charles and the state of the second sec	I CALLER THE STORE			and the second sec	formed state house states
Usin Dentsen	noor Took (Chatin many D	iele Kowbook	el Incete lle v	In Out
nelh Lieleie	NGES 1006 .	Diamonely D	ons neguuar	u manamer	10 VM
and the second sec		and the second se	State and the second	Construction Construction and the pro-	and the second

Help



1 Tap **)** the Help icon to open it.

You see the Quick Help sheet and a button labeled **Help Notebook**.

While the Quick Help sheet is showing, you can get help about anything on the screen by tapping ightharpoonup it. The contents of the sheet change according to what you tap.

To get more detailed help, organized by topic and task, tap y Help Notebook.

2 Tap **)** Done to close Quick Help.

"Getting Help" in this chapter gives more detail about how to use Quick Help and the Help notebook.

FUNDAMENTALS SEEING WHAT'S ON THE BOOKSHELF

Preferences



 Tap + the Preferences icon to open it. These sheets let you set options for PenPoint.

You'll see the first Preference option sheet, PenPoint.

- 2 To see a list of the option sheets, tap y the arrow in the title line.
 - ▲ Tap the name of the option sheet you want to see.
 - ▲ You can set options for such things as handwriting, screen fonts and layout.
- 3 Tap → Close to close Preferences without changing any preset options.
 - ▲ To apply your choices and continue using the sheet, tap Apply.
 - ▲ To apply your choices and close the sheet, tap **Apply & Close**.

To find out more about how to use option sheets, read "Using Option and Dialog Sheets" in this chapter.

To learn more about the different options you can set, see "Setting Preferences" in chapter 9 (Managing the Notebook).

USING PENPOINT

SEEING WHAT'S ON THE BOOKSHELF

Tools

Note book: Contents <1> Document Edit Create View Show Sort Name Page 🖹 Read Me First. ..2 First Experience З B Samples 4 🖹 New Product Ideas 5 Package Design Letter R Fist Expe Too Is L Π A Personal Dictionary Handwriting Customization Clock A Disk Manager Letter Practice Keyboard T Eil Printers S-Shot I.K 1 ? * ß 7 1 He lp Preferences Took Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer In Out

Tools contains accessories that you use in working with your Notebook.

- 1 Tap y the Tools icon to open it. (You may see tools other than those pictured here if you've installed different ones on your computer.)
- 2 To see each tool, tap to open it.

The tools include:

- ▲ A Clock displays the time and date and also lets you set an alarm with a reminder message.
- ▲ A Personal Dictionary contains words that you add to it while proofing or checking the spelling of your work.
- Handwriting Customization contains sentences that you copy to show PenPoint how you write.
- ▲ A Letter Practice sheet lets you get used to writing on the screen.
- ▲ A software Keyboard lets you enter text into a document by tapping . the keys.
- ▲ A Disk Manager allows you to transfer documents to and from the Notebook.
- ▲ A **Printers** sheet lets you configure the printers you've installed.
- **3** To close a tool, tap its close corner or the Close button.
- 4 To close Tools, tap y its close corner—the triangle in the upper left hand corner.

See "Working with Notebook Objects" in this chapter for information about how to move, resize, and close the tools.

SEEING WHAT'S ON THE BOOKSHELF

Chapter 9, Managing the Notebook tells you more about Tools in general. You'll find an explanation of how to use each individual tool in the appropriate section of this manual:

- Clock: "Using the Clock" in chapter 9 (Managing the Notebook).
- Personal Dictionary: "Adding Words to the Dictionary" in chapter 6 (Writing in the Notebook).
- Letter Practice: "Learning to Write on the Computer Screen" in chapter 6 (Writing in the Notebook).
- Handwriting Customization: "Customizing Your Writing" in chapter 6 (Writing in the Notebook).
- Keyboard: "Using a Keyboard" in chapter 6 (Writing in the Notebook).
- Disk Manager: "Displaying the Disk Manager" in chapter 11 (Filing Documents).
- Printers: "Setting up Printers" in chapter 4 (Installing Applications and Devices).



Stationery

Stationery: Conte	ents	<1
Name.	Page	Menu
MiniText	2	
🗋 MiniText.		
Business	4	
🗋 Memo		
DrawingPaper		
Drawing Paper	7	
1		

1 Tap **y** the Stationery icon to open it.

You see the Stationery notebook's table of contents.

The Stationery notebook contains pieces of stationery for the different applications you've installed. Each application has its own section in the Stationery notebook.

2 Tap . the close corner to close the Stationery notebook.

Disks

Disks	
olume Edit View Sort Show	SALES
Name.	Type.
Customers	Dir
New Products	Dir
Sales Reports	Dir
Sales by Region	MiniText
🖂 Weekly Report	MiniText
11F	Dir

1 Tap y the Disks icon to open the Disk Manager.

If you have connected the PenPoint computer to a disk drive, you see an icon with the name of the disk. Tap ightharpoonup the icon to see what's on the disk.

Use the Disk Manager to transfer documents to and from the Notebook.

2 Tap y the close corner to close the Disk Manager.

Read chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents, to find out how to use stationery. Chapter 11, Filing Documents, explains how to transfer documents with the Disk Manager.

FUNDAMENTALS

SEEING WHAT'S ON THE BOOKSHELF



Canal	we	rty fab		p	
Caps ₁ ↔		c v b	nm.	<u>,</u>	↔
Ctrl	Alt			Alt	Ctrl

- Tap → the Keyboard icon to open the software keyboard so you can tap to add text to a document.
- **2** Tap **)** the close corner to close the keyboard.

Installer

Clock 2: Fonts Drawing Paper Services HWCUSTOM 36,665 Keyboard 11,047 PDICT 3,450 Snapshot 28,894	Edit Nam	Home (Insta 2	Preferences Dictionaries	
Drawing Paper Services HWCUSTOM 36,665 Keyboard 11,047 PDICT 3,450 Snapshot 28,894	Cloci	κ 2	Fonts	
HWCUSTOM 36,665 Keyboard 11,047 PDICT 3,450 Snapshot 28,894	Draw	ning Paper	Services	
Keyboard 11.047 PDICT 3,450 Snapshot 28,894	HWC	USTOM 3	6,665	
PDICT 3,450 Snapshot 28,894	Keyb	oard 1	1,047	
Snapshot 28,894	PDIC	Т	3,450	
	Snap	ishot 2	8,894	

1 Tap **)** the Install icon to open the Installer.

You see a sheet showing you what's installed in the computer. Each install sheet contains information about a different category.

- 2 Tap : the arrow on the title line to see a list of the install sheets.
 - ▲ Tap the name of the install sheet you want to see.
- **3** Tap **)** the close corner to close the Installer.

To find out how to use the keyboard, see "Using the Keyboard" in chapter 6 (Writing in the Notebook). Chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices, explains how to use the Installer to copy applications, fonts, and other utilities to your Notebook.

SEEING WHAT'S ON THE BOOKSHELF

In Box and Out Box

When you finish working with a document, you can send it to someone or print it. If you're not connected to a printer or modem when you choose the **Print** or **Send** command from the Document menu, PenPoint places the documents in the Out box. After you connect the computer to the equipment, you can automatically print or send the documents in the Out box.

The In box stores incoming documents such as faxes and electronic mail.



You open the In or Out box the same way. This example shows the Out box.

1 Tap y the Out box icon to open it.

The documents you've asked PenPoint to print or send are listed under the service you've installed.

The Out box remains empty until you install the appropriate service and choose the Send or Print command.

2 Tap) the close corner to close the Out box.

Read chapter 10, Printing, Sending, and Receiving Documents, to learn how to use the In and Out box.

Using Option and Dialog Sheets

When you choose a menu command that's followed by an ellipsis (three dots) you see a dialog or option sheet.

Dialog sheets prompt you for further information before carrying out the command. For example, when you choose Find, you'll see a dialog sheet that asks you what to find. You fill in the requested information by writing in a text field or by choosing options. When you have finished, tap ightharpoondown the appropriate button, and PenPoint carries out the command.

Option sheets allow you to set **attributes** for a document or for a selection in a document. For example, you can choose an option that prevents a document from being accidentally deleted or choose a font style for the text in a document.

This section tells you how to use the option and dialog sheets. You can find more information about what's on them under the appropriate topic elsewhere in this book. For example chapter 8, Finding and Replacing Text, explains what's on the Find dialog sheet.

> To set options that apply to PenPoint—and therefore to all documents you create choose options from Preferences on the Bookshelf.

USING OPTION AND DIALOG SHEETS

Displaying Option Sheets

To display an option sheet, you choose a menu command or draw a check \checkmark on an object.

Some option sheets have more than one sheet. For example, Text options include Character, Paragraph, Tab Stop, and View option sheets. An arrow on the title line tells you there's more than one sheet. Tap \downarrow it to see a list of the other ones.



Choosing Options

After displaying an option sheet, you choose options from a check list, multiple check list, or pop-up menu. Sometimes you write information in fields. For example, on the paragraph option sheet you might write the number of inches to indent the first line of a paragraph.

Once you've chosen the options, you tap . the Apply button to apply the options. If you're selecting options from more than one sheet, be sure to tap the Apply button to accept the options before going on to another sheet.

Pac	kage Design Letter	<17>
Document Edit Insert	Case Format	
	New Worl 19271 Pal Los Angeles, C. February 1	d Foods î m Blvd. A 90036 7, 1991
Ms. Elena Huerta FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321	Package Design Letter 🕨 Acc	BS S
RE: New package de:	Deletable: Yes Editable: No	
Dear Ms. Huerta:	Access Speed: > Standard	
We need a new desig condiments.	Borders & Controls:	
Recently, an executiv of our samples home our line. He briefly le	✓ Menu Lir ✓ Scroll Ma Cork Ma	ne argins gin
nis son fan into it wit	Apply Apply & Close C	lose
Our bottles should be tricycle powered by a our new salsa broke, s floor.	acte to muscand the impact three year old. But four bot pilling their contents all ove	monn a les of 1 the
The executive never g	ot a chance to try our produ	ct.
Can you design a ligh bottle that won't break travelling next week	tweight, recyclable, 8 oz. pl. ; under moderate impact? I'l put you can fax me suggeste	astic I be d a

To choose an option from a **pop-up list**:

- ▲ Tap → the arrow next to the option to see the other options.
- ▲ Tap to select another option.

You can also choose options from check lists and multiple check lists:

- ▲ A check list has a single line which indicates that you can only choose one option from it; tap ↓ to make a choice.
- ▲ A multiple check list has a double line next to it which indicates that you can choose more than one option. Tap → each one you want. If you change your mind, tap again to clear your choice.

USING PENPOINT

26

USING OPTION AND DIALOG SHEETS

Package Design Letter 🦿 🦿			17>
Document Edit Insert (Case Format		
New World 19271 Paln Los Angeles, CA		New World Food 19271 Palm Blvd Angeles, CA 9003	s Î 5
		February 17, 199	1
Ms. Elena Huerta FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321	Package Design	Letter 🕨 Title & Info	
RE: New package des	Title:	Package Design Letter	
	Author:		
Dear Ms. Huerta:	Comments:	cc: Mark	
We need a new design condiments.	Created:	11/12/90	
	Last Modified	: 1/12/91	
Recently, an executive of our samples home i our line. He briefly lef his son ran into it with	Filed Size: Active Size:	БК 42 К	
	Apply App	ly & Close Close	
Our bottles should be a tricycle powered by a t our new salsa broke, sj floor.	able to withstan three year old. I pilling their cor	d the impact from a But four bottles of itents all over the	
The executive never g	ot a chance to t	ry our product.	
Can you design a light bottle that won't break travelling next week, b	weight, recycla under moderat ut you can fax	ble, 8 oz. plastic e impact? I'll be me suggested	Chever 1
? ✓ 💾 Help Preferences Tools S	1 Nationery Disks Ke	🔬 🌒 🚣 d	i. ut

Option sheets may also have **text fields** in which you write information.

- ▲ Enter text by writing on the line.
- ▲ If something is already written there, draw a cross out X through the text and write in the new text.

After making your choices or filling in the information, tap ightharpoonup the appropriate action button:

- To apply your choices and continue using the sheet, tap Apply.
- To apply the changes and close the sheet, tap Apply & Close.
- ▲ To close the sheet without applying the choices, tap Close.

If the option sheet covers up something you want to see on the page, you can reposition it by dragging its title line, or resize it by dragging the corner or bottom handle as explained in the section "Working with Notebook Objects" earlier in this chapter.

Option sheets show you the current settings for what you've selected. On a pop-up list, the choice that's showing is the current setting.

On a multiple check list, a gray checkmark tells you which option is currently set. When you select a new option, PenPoint displays a black checkmark next to it. (If an option is unavailable, the label is dimmed, and you won't be able to choose it.)

Tapping **Apply** applies only what you've changed.

To find out how to edit text in fields, see chapter 7, Editing and Formatting Text.

Using Dialog Sheets

Dialog sheets work like option sheets, but their purpose is slightly different. Option sheets set the attributes of a selection or document. Dialog sheets ask you for information that's needed before carrying out a command, such as what text to find.

You display dialog sheets and enter information on them the same way you do option sheets. That is:

- To display a dialog sheet, choose a command or draw an equivalent gesture.
 For example, to check the spelling in a document, you can choose Spell from the Edit menu or draw an G on the document title line.
- Display the choices on a pop-up list by tapping it; tap to choose one.
- Choose an option on a check list by tapping it.
- Choose one or more options on a multiple check list by tapping them; tap an option again to deselect it.
- Enter information in a field by writing in it.
- Reposition it by dragging its title line.
- Resize it by dragging the corner or bottom handle.

After choosing options or filling in the requested information, tap the appropriate button. For example, on the Find dialog sheet, tap the **Find** button to find the next occurrence of the text you asked PenPoint to locate.
Copying and Moving Notebook Objects

You can choose commands from the Edit menu or draw equivalent gestures to copy or move:

- a document to another location in the Notebook
- information to another place on the page or to a different page
- items on the Bookshelf to another location on the Bookshelf.

To move an icon on the Bookshelf:



1 Use the press ▶ gesture. Put the pen down on the icon and hold it there until you see a marquee an animated line surrounding the icon.

(If you decide not to move it, tap the icon.)

- **2** Without lifting the pen, drag the icon to the new location.
 - ▲ Lift the pen to complete the move.

FUNDAMENTALS

COPYING AND MOVING NOTEBOOK OBJECTS



for our
<20>
Î
La Cu
rent Product

To copy a sentence from one page to the following page:

- **1** Triple tap **:** anywhere in the sentence to select it.
 - ▲ Barely lift the pen between taps.
- 2 Tap press .≯ the selected sentence. (Tap the selection and then immediately press until you see a double line marquee.)
 - ▲ Barely lift the pen between the tap and the press.
 - When you copy or move more than a line of text, PenPoint surrounds a few characters of the selected text in a marquee to make it easier to drag.

Tap the page turn arrow to turn to the next page. When you turn to the page, the text in the marquee follows.

- **3** Drag the text in the marquee to the new location.
 - PenPoint inserts it where you lift your pen.

To find out more about copying or moving information in document, read chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents. See Managing the Notebook (chapter 9) for information on how to rearrange documents on the Table of Contents. That chapter also contains information about different methods for turning pages.

> You can also select what you want to move or copy, and then choose the appropriate command from the Edit menu. Once you see the marquee, you can drag it to its new location.

Getting Help

You can get two kinds of help from PenPoint: Quick Help and the Help notebook. Use Quick Help when you see something on the screen you want to know more about, and the Help notebook when you want to look up a topic.

Getting Quick Help

Quick Help briefly describes the part of the Notebook or page you asked about.



- Tap , the Help icon on the Bookshelf to see the Quick Help sheet.
 - You'll see instructions on using the Quick Help sheet.

2 Tap y on the part of the Notebook or page you want information about.

- ▲ You see a brief description. Some explanation include a list of gestures you can use in this area.
- **3** Tap **)** Done to close Quick Help.
 - ▲ Or, if you want to use the Help Notebook, tap **Help Notebook** to open it and close Quick Help.

If the information doesn't fit on the Quick Help sheet, you can bring the hidden part into view by scrolling it. Draw a flick up l on the sheet or press **y** the bottom scroll arrow in the scroll margin. See "Scrolling a Document" in chapter 5 (Creating and Using Documents) for information about scrolling documents.

Using the Help Notebook

The Help notebook organizes information topically so that you can find out how to use different features of PenPoint, the computer, or the applications you've installed on it. You can continue working while displaying the Help notebook.

Help: Contents	<1>
Document Edit Create View Show Sort	
	<u>Page</u>
🖞 Using Help	
PenPoint Help	
🗍 Hardw&re Help	144
🖹 Recharging the Battery	146
🗎 Removing the Battery	
🖹 Installing a Battery	147
D Applications	148
uthwestern curry sauce is is essentially a barbecue <u>sauce.</u> Grilling	or

- Double tap : the Help icon on the Bookshelf.
 - Or, tap the icon to open Quick Help and then tap Help Notebook.

You'll see the Help table of contents.

- 2 Double tap : a section title to see the topics, as you would in the Notebook Table of Contents.
 - ▲ Or, tap the page number for a section to see the section table of contents.
- **3** Tap **)** the page number of the topic you want to see.
- 4 Tap : the close corner to close the notebook.
 - ▲ The next time you use it, the Help notebook opens to the last page you used.

To move the notebook to see what's below it, press > the title line and hold until you see the border darken, and then drag the notebook.

,

CHAPTER 3



Using Gestures

You use gestures to give commands to PenPoint and to edit text in a document or text field. Most gestures have corresponding menu commands, but you'll find that the gesture is usually faster.

This chapter contains **gesture profiles** which tell you what each gesture does and how it works. The gesture profiles are in alphabetical order. For quick reference, you can look in the table at the beginning of the chapter. It lists the gestures by their functions (such as copying and moving things). You'll also find there a table of the core gestures—the ones you'll most often use.

PenPoint recognizes gestures the same way it does your handwriting. Thus you'll get the best results if you draw gestures with a light, firm touch, and make clean lines free of hooks or extensions. The gesture is complete when you lift your pen away from the screen or pause for more than a few seconds. If a gesture has more than one part (a double flick, for example), keep the pen very close to the screen, and complete the gesture quickly.

You can set the amount of time that PenPoint gives you between lifting the pen tip and recognizing a gesture by choosing a number for the Timeout category in Preferences.

If you draw a gesture and PenPoint doesn't recognize it, you'll see a small starburst. If the gesture is correct, but you've tried to use it somewhere it won't work, you'll see a series of concentric circles on the screen.

Programs you install in your Notebook may add their own gestures. Refer to those guides for more information.

Using Gesture Profiles

We've used several conventions in these gesture profiles which should help you:

- The drawing in the box shows how big the gesture should be in relation to letters on the screen.
- The letters in the box rest on a baseline. This should help you draw the gestures correctly above or below the line of text on the screen.
- If the direction of a stroke is important one end will be thicker than the other. Start drawing the gesture where you see the thicker line, and draw in the direction of the line's tapering.
- The drawings for gestures that involve tapping or pressing include a symbol for the pen tip. For example, the symbol for double tap shows two dots and the pen tip.
 Whenever you use more than one tap, or tap and then press, make sure you make all the taps or the tap and press in the same spot on the screen.
- For detailed instructions on how to draw each gesture, read the section "What Works" in each gesture profile.

PenPoint Gestures

This table briefly describes PenPoint gestures by function and location. The gestures are arranged alphabetically within each category. Some gestures work in several places, and so are repeated in several categories. The categories are:

- Basic Gestures
- Copying and Moving Text & Objects
- Deleting Text & Objects
- Editing Text in Documents
- Editing Text in Edit Pads
- Editing Text in Boxed & Ruled Writing Pads
- Editing Overwrite Fields on Forms
- Editing Fill-in Fields on Forms
- Getting Help



Basic Gestures

Bracket left selects text or adjusts the selection.

Bracket right selects text or adjusts the selection.



Caret opens a writing pad or creates a document.



Check displays options for selected text or objects.



Circle opens an edit pad.



Cross out deletes selected text or objects.



Flick scrolls a Notebook page or pop-up list.



Insert space adds a blank space in text or boxed pads.



Pigtail deletes a character in text or boxed pads.



Press sets an insertion point or gets text or an object ready to move.

- Working with Embedded Documents
- Scrolling
- Setting Options for Documents, Text, & Objects
- On the Bookshelf
- In the Document Title Line
- On Notebook Tabs
- In the Scroll Margin
- In the Table of Contents





Tap selects text or chooses menus and options.



Tap press gets text or an object ready to be copied.



Copying and Moving Text & Objects



Press and drag moves a selection or object.



Tap press and drag copies a selection or object.

Deleting Text & Objects



Cross out deletes words, selected text and objects in documents or tables of contents.



Line through deletes characters in edit pads.



Scratch out deletes words in text and ruled writing pads.



Pigtail deletes one character in text and pads.

36



Editing Text in Documents

Arrow up or down increases or decreases the size of a word or selected text.



Bold makes words or selected text bold.



Bracket left selects the word to the right of the bracket; extends or reduces selections.



Bracket right selects the word to the left of the bracket: extends or reduces selections.



Caret opens a small writing pad.



Caret tap opens a large embedded writing pad.



Check displays options for the selected text.



Check tap displays options for an embedded document.



Circle opens an edit pad for a word or text selection.



Circle line opens a blank edit pad so you can replace a word or text selection.



Cross out deletes words and selected text.



Double caret creates an embedded document.



Double flick left or right scrolls to the extreme right or left of a document.



Double flick up or down scrolls to the bottom *or top* of a document.



Double tap selects a word.



Find searches for a specific word in a document or selection, and allows you to replace it.



Flick left or right scrolls to the right or left of the screen.

Editing Text in Documents (continued)



Flick up or down scrolls a line to the top or bottom of the screen.



Hyperlink (circle tap) creates a hyperlink



 \odot

Insert space adds a space.



Initial caps formats text with initial capital letters.



Insert character opens a box for adding a single letter.



Insert tab inserts a tab.



Italics italicizes words or selected text.



Lower case formats text as lower case.



New line inserts a line break.



New paragraph inserts a paragraph break.



Normal makes a word or selection plain text.



Pigtail deletes one character.



Press and drag selects text.



Proof displays alternate spellings of a word.



Quadruple tap selects a paragraph.



Scratch out deletes words.



Spell checks the spelling of a document or selection.



Tap selects one character.

USING PENPOINT



Editing Text in Documents (continued)

Triple tap selects a sentence.



Underline underlines words or selected text.



Upper case formats text as upper case.



Insert space adds one or more spaces.

Editing Text in Edit Pads



Line through deletes characters.



Pigtail deletes one character.



Press makes a character box active.

Editing Text in Boxed & Ruled Writing Pads



Insert space adds one or more spaces.



Line through deletes characters in boxed pads.



Pigtail deletes one character.



Press makes a character box active.



Scratch out deletes characters in ruled pads.



Editing Overwrite Fields on Forms



Line through deletes the characters beneath the gesture.



Pigtail deletes a single character.



Scratch out deletes the characters beneath the gesture.

Editing Overwrite Fields on Forms (continued)





Caret opens a writing pad.



Circle opens an edit pad.



Cross out deletes the contents of the field.



Double tap selects the contents of the field.



Insert space inserts a space.



Pigtail deletes a character.



Press sets an insertion point for keyboard entry.



Press and drag moves text from one field to another.



Scratch out deletes the contents of the field.



Tap press and drag copies text from one field to another.



Tap opens an edit pad.

Getting Help



Double tap on the Help icon opens the Help Notebook.



Question Mark on icons, option sheet controls, and other objects displays Quick Help.



Tap on the Help icon opens Quick Help.

38

Working with Embedded Documents



Borders hides the borders.



Check tap displays options when borders are hidden.



Double caret creates an embedded document.



Scrolling

Double flick left *or right* scrolls to the extreme right *or left* of a document.



Double flick up *or down* scrolls to the bottom *or top* of a document.



Flick left or right scrolls the document right or left.

Flick up or down scrolls a line to the top or bottom of the screen.

Setting Options for Documents, Text, & Objects



Check displays options.



Check tap displays options for an embedded document when borders are hidden.



On the Bookshelf

Caret opens the pop-up Create menu to create a document or notebook.



Check displays options for a Bookshelf icon.



Circle opens an edit pad for the title of an icon.



Cross out deletes a Bookshelf icon.



Hyperlink (circle tap) creates a hyperlink button.



 \odot

Plus selects Bookshelf icons.



Press and drag moves Bookshelf icons.



Tap opens an item on the Bookshelf.



Tap press and drag copies a Bookshelf icon.



B

In the Document Title Line

Borders hides a document's borders and menus. To show them again, check tap \checkmark in the document and use the Access option sheet.



Check displays options for the document.



Circle opens an edit pad for the document title.



Cork margin shows or hides the cork margin.



Cross out deletes the document.



Find searches for a specific word in the document and lets you replace it.



Flick up *or down* zooms *or reduces* the page view, if that preference is set.



Menu shows or hides the document's menu line.



Press and drag moves a floating document.



Tab shows or hides a document's Notebook tab.



40

On Notebook Tabs



Double tap floats a document, if that preference is set.



Circle opens an edit pad for the tab's name.



Double flick up or down moves overlapped Notebook tabs to the top or bottom of the column.



Flick left on any Notebook tab displays all the tabs at once.



Flick up moves a Notebook tab up to show the overlapped tab below. Or flick down reveals an overlapped tab.



In the Scroll Margin





Flick up or down scrolls a screen length to the top *or bottom*.

Double flick left or right scrolls to the far right or left of a document.

Double flick up or down scrolls to the bottom or top of a document.



In the Table of Contents

Caret opens the pop-up Create menu to create a new document.

Check displays options for the document.

In the Table of Contents (continued)



Circle opens an edit pad for the document title.



Cross out deletes the document.



Double flick left or right scrolls to the far right *or left* of the Table of Contents.



Double flick up or down scrolls to the bottom *or top* of the Table of Contents.



Double tap expands or collapses section contents. On a page number it floats a document, if that preference is set.



Flick left or right scrolls to the right or left.



Flick up or down scrolls a line to the top or bottom of the screen.



Hyperlink (circle tap) creates a hyperlink button.



Press and drag on a document title moves the document.



Tap on a document's page number or icon turns to that page; on a document title selects the document.



Tap press and drag on the document title copies a document.





Arrow Up Increases the point size of a word or text selection.

Arrow Down Decreases the point size.



Use two strokes to draw an arrow.

- **1** Draw the arrow tip.
- **2** Then barely lift the pen and quickly draw the arrow shaft.

Be sure to make the arrow tip in one stroke from left to right.

The tip of the arrow must touch the word you want to change.

What Doesn't Work

Arrows made with one stroke. Pausing too long between strokes. Targeting incorrectly. Too much angle on the arrow shaft. Making a loop at the arrow tip. Starting the arrow tip from the right. Cluttering the gesture with extra hooks or wiggles.

decreases to next available size \longrightarrow decreases to next available size

increases to next available size ______ increases to next available size



Bold/Borders Makes text bold. Hides an embedded document's border.

To Make Text Bold

Make an uppercase ${\sf B}$ over the word or selected text that you want to appear as bold text.

Bold one Bold one word .



Make an uppercase ${\boldsymbol{\mathsf{B}}}$ in the title line of the embedded document.

	Read Me First <2>	
Document Edit Insert	Case Format	
	ones a la martina de la companya de	

What Doesn't Work

Making the **B** so that most of the gesture is above or below the line.

Putting the B over part of a word other than the one you want to format.

Bold one Bord

Making the B too much outside the selection.

Making the **B** in a different way than you did in Handwriting Customization.



42

Bracket, Left Selects text

■ If no text is selected, a left bracket drawn anywhere on a word selects it. If there's already a text selection and you draw the bracket facing the selection, the selection gets extended to the bracket. If you draw it on a word that's part of an existing selection, it reduces the selection to that word.





If no text is selected, a right bracket drawn anywhere on a word selects it. If there's already a text selection and you draw the bracket facing the selection, the selection gets extended to the bracket. If you draw it on a word that's part of an existing selection, it reduces the selection to that word.

What Works	What Doesn't Work
Draw it in one stroke. Start at the top and draw three	Drawing from the bottom up.
sides of a rectangle, leaving it open to the right.	Drawing extremely curved or \supset >
	Drawing another bracket before lifting the pen away from the screen.
Selects a word	ects a word.
Adjusts a selection. Adj	usts a selection.



Caret Opens a small writing pad in text for adding a word.

What Works

Starting the gesture at the lower left, draw a slanted line up and then down to the right. The caret tip must point at the space between words.

A writing pad pops up above the tip of the gesture. New text appears at that same point.



What Doesn't Work	
	ti e i sente braandare.
Making two strokes.	\wedge
	Å
Cleaning a loop at the up.	
Starting on the right side of the care	
otarting on the light side of the car	
Cluttering the gesture with extra	
	Λ
hooks or wiggles.	
with the hole with the research of the property of the second second second second second second second second	

📕 🛛 Where It Works

In a table of contents, a cork margin, or the Bookshelf, opens the Create menu to create new documents.



Caret Tap Opens an embedded writing pad in text.

What Works

- 1 Starting the gesture at the lower left, draw a slanted line up and then down to the right. The caret tip must point at the space between words.
- **2** Barely raising the pen, quickly tap over the caret tip to complete the gesture.
- The caret tip sets the insertion point for the new text.

Opens up a large writing pad.

What Doesn't Work

Tapping too far off-center.

- Making the tap too far inside
- the caret.

Lifting the pen tip too far before tapping.

USING PENPOINT



44

Check Displays options for a word, object, or selection in text.

📕 What Works

Draw the check in one gesture, with the beginning of the first downward stroke on the word or selection whose options you want to see.



What Doesn't Work

Vertical (too similar to the insert space gesture) Hooked Horizontal (too similar to the new line gesture)



📕 🛛 Where It Works

Displays options for objects and icons.

When you draw it in the title line of a document or accessory you see options for that thing.



Check Tap Displays options for an embedded document when you've hidden its borders and title line.

Choose Show from the Access sheet to redisplay the embedded document's borders.

📕 🛛 What Works

- **1** Anywhere in the embedded document, draw the checkmark in one stroke.
- **2** Then, barely lifting the pen, quickly make a tap just to the right of it.

What Doesn't Work

Drawing the checkmark at a horizontal or vertical angle.

Hooked lines.

Tapping in the middle or beneath the check mark.

Lifting the pen too far before tapping.



Opens an edit pad for a word or selection in text, text fields, and labels.

📕 What Works

Circle

Start at the top of the character, word, or series of words that you want to edit.

Draw a neatly closed, counter-clockwise circle. Ovals also work.

A

wab work too.

An edit pad appears containing the circled characters, word, or words.

What Doesn't Work

Not starting the circle from the top. Overlapping parts of the circle too much (overlapping a little is okay).

Not closing the circle.

n edit pad appears containing th

📕 Where It Works

Opens an edit pad for a document title, or a label on a tab, icon, or hyperlink button.



Circle Line Opens a blank writing pad to replace a word or selection in text.

What Works

- **1** Over the word or within the selection that you want to replace, draw a circle or oval.
- **2** Then, barely lifting the pen from the screen, quickly make a horizontal line across the middle of the circle.
- On a single word:

A plain circle gettere opens a pad filled with text. A circleline gesture opens a blank pad.

On a selection:

A plain circle gesture opens a pad filled with the filled with

You may begin the line from either the right or left.

What Doesn't Work

Lifting the pen too far before drawing the line.

Pausing too long between drawing the circle and the line.

Not making the circle correctly. (See circle gesture.)

Too much angle on the horizontal line.





- 📕 What Works
 - **1** First select the text, document, or object that you want the button to link to.
 - **2** Make a circle where you want the hyperlink button to appear.
 - **3** Then, barely lifting the pen, tap in the center of the circle.

The link button will appear where you make the tap.





Not making the circle correctly. (See circle gesture.)

 \bigcirc

Pausing too long between drawing the circle and tapping.

📕 Where It Works

You can create hyperlink buttons almost anywhere, including documents, cork margins, and on the Bookshelf.



Cork Margin Shows or hides the cork margin at the bottom of a document.

What Works

Make an uppercase C in the title line of the document.

What Doesn't Work
Starting with a loop at the top
of the C.
Closing it so much that it's interpreted
as a circle.



Cross Out Deletes a word or selection in text, or any object directly beneath the X.

What Works

Make an X using two distinct strokes (top to bottom) over the selection or object that you want to delete.

- **1** Draw the first stroke; barely lift the pen from the screen
- **2** Quickly draw the second stroke.



📓 🛛 Where It Works

Deletes the contents of a field, documents from the Table of Contents, and icons from the Bookshelf. When you draw it over a document's title line, it deletes the document. When you draw it over a disk icon or disk name in the Disk Manager, it ejects the disk.



Double Caret

Displays the Create menu to create a document embedded within an existing document.

•

📕 🛛 What Works

Two carets, one nested beneath the other. (Either upper or lower can be made first.)

- 1 Each caret gesture should be drawn from left to right with one stroke.
- **2** After drawing the first caret, barely lift the pen from the screen and quickly draw the second caret.

What Doesn't Work

Using more than two strokes to make the two carets.

Making either caret from right to left.

Making strokes with extra hooks or wiggles.

Lifting the pen tip too far before making the second caret.

Pausing too long between drawing the second caret.

Too much overlapping.

Too much space between carets.



Double Flick Left Scrolls to the left edge of a document. Double Flick Right Scrolls to the right edge.



What Works

- 1 Start the first flick on the column where you want the scroll to begin and draw a short, straight line, making a snappy flick with your pen.
- **2** Barely lift the pen tip and quickly make a second flick.

Flick left to scroll to the right edge; flick right to scroll to the left edge.

Make your flicks as if you're pushing a real piece of paper with them.

What Doesn't Work

Flicks that are at odd angles or made in different directions.

Lifting the pen too far or taking too long before making the second flick.

4

1

Hooks at the beginning or end of flicks.

Touching the screen and pausing before flicking.

Where It Works

You can flick anywhere in a document (except draw and paint documents) including tables of contents.



Double Flick Up Scroll to the bottom of a document. Double Flick Down Scrolls to the top.



📕 🛛 What Works

- 1 Start the flick on the line where you want the scroll to begin and draw a short, straight line, making a snappy flick with your pen.
- **2** Barely lift the pen tip and quickly make a second flick.

Flick down to scroll to the top of the document; flick up to scroll to the bottom of the document.

Make your flicks as if you're pushing a real piece of paper with them.

What Doesn't Work

Flicks that are at odd angles or made in different directions.

Lifting the pen too far or taking too long before making the second flick.

Hooks at the beginning or end of flicks.

Touching the screen and pausing before flicking.



You can flick anywhere in a document (except draw and paint documents) including tables of contents.



Double Tap

Selects a word in text. Expands or collapses sections in the Table of Contents. Floats a page (if that preference is set).

What Works	What Doesn't Work
Touch the screen firmly twice in the same spot, barely	Lifting the pen tip too far between taps.
lifting the pen between taps. Then lift the pen.	Pausing between taps.
■ Double tap on a word to select the word.	Tapping on two different objects or words.
select a word select	t a word

Double tap on a section title in the Table of Contents to show documents in the section.

	\Rightarrow \mathbb{O} Sales	. 9
D Customers	Sales by Region	. 10
🖹 Chain Stores 13	🖹 New Hires	11
Complaints to Act on	0 Customers	. 12
🖓 New Bottle Design	🖹 Chain Stores	. 13

Where It Works

Double tap on a word to select the word. Double tap on a section title in the Table of Contents to show section contents. On a table of contents page number, floats the page. On a tab, floats the tabbed page. On a hyperlink button floats the page attached to the hyperlink button.



Eject/Export In the Disk Manager, ejects a floppy disk. In a Table of Contents, exports a document.

📕 In the Disk Manager

Make a capital **E** over the disk icon or disk label.

/	e de ste	i de la	n i d	Disks	i na ca	
E						
Sales						
Volume	Edit	View	Sort	Show		Stes
Name						Type
🗋 Per	point					Dir

What Doesn't Work

Making the E differently from the way you practiced it in Handwriting Customization.

In a Table of Contents

Make a capital **E** over the title of the document you wish to export. A double marquee appears around the document title. Then, drag it to the Disk Manager to export it.

📕 🛛 Where It Works

Over the Disk Manager icon on the bookshelf.



50

Opens a dialogue sheet that lets you search a document or selection for a specified word, and replace it with another word.

📕 What Works

Find

Make an upper case F over the document or selection you want to search. Use three strokes even if you didn't practice F's that way in Handwriting Customization.

Keep the pen tip close to the screen while making the gesture.

Used in a title line, the gesture searches the entire document.

No	read Me First		(9.3)	12.5-
1			· · · · ·	
	a constant and a second second		100 28 C 016 0 C 10 C 0 C 010 C 0	6.5
				307
LUncument Fait insert U	ase hormat			1910
			And the second se	8.50
	to the shield of the sole			100
			A	Sec.
		2.4.5.5.5.5.0.9.5.3.4.6.0.0.5.5.0.5	an a	1000

- Used within a document, it searches from that point to the end.
- Used anywhere in a selection, it searches the entire selection.



Flick Left Scrolls documents right. On the document title line, turns to the next page.

Flick Right Scrolls documents left. On the document title line, turns to the previous page.

A flick left on a column moves that column to the left edge of the screen, revealing more of the right side of the page.

On the title line it turns to the next page.

A flick right on a column moves that column to the right edge of the screen, revealing more of the left side of the page.

On the title line it turns to the previous page.

📕 🛛 What Works

Draw a short, straight line making a snappy flick with your pen.

Make your flicks as if you're pushing a real piece of paper with them.



Where It Works

In a notebook with overlapped tabs, flick left displays all of the tabs in columns. Any gesture puts them back into one column.

What Doesn't Work

Not using three strokes to make the gesture. Lifting the pen too far before completing the gesture.



Flick Up Scrolls documents up. Flick Down Scrolls documents down.

Scrolls documents up and down to reveal the portion not on the screen.

📕 What Works

Draw a short, straight line, making a snappy flick with your pen. Think of it as pushing a piece of paper.

A flick up moves the line next to it to the top of the screen, revealing more of the bottom of the page.

A flick down moves that line to the bottom of the screen, revealing more of the top of the page.

Business

What Doesn't Work Odd angles.

Where It Works

A flick up on a pop-up list shows the next choice; flick down shows the previous choice. A flick up in the title line of a document zooms the page (if that preference is set). Flick on an overlapped Notebook tab to see the one below.



Initial Caps Capitalizes a word or selection.

Business

What Works

Starting within the word you want to format with an initial capital letter, draw a horizontal line left-to-right through most of the word, then complete the gesture with a short line up (90 degrees).

The right angle should be made before you reach the end of the word.

INITIAL GARS INITIAL Caps

What Doesn't Work

Making the gesture in two strokes.

Making the gesture at odd angles.

Underlining the words with the horizontal line instead of drawing it through the words.



Insert Character

Opens a single-character writing pad.

What Works

Beginning where you want to insert a character, draw a short line up and, without lifting the pen, complete the gesture with a short line to the right (90 degrees).

The place where the pen tip first touches the screen determines the insertion point.

What Doesn't Work

Not 90 degrees. (The gesture must be made at a right angle to the text line.) Starting the gesture too far below the text line. insert a ch**f**acter

insert a chracter \rightarrow insert a chracter \rightarrow insert a chracter \rightarrow insert a chracter



Insert Space

Adds one or more spaces in boxed pads. Inserts one space in text.

- In Boxed Pads
 - Begin in the middle of the character box before which you want the space.
 - **2** With one stroke, draw a line down and then right.
 - **3** End the gesture below the next box to the right.

Think of it as pushing the character in the box one space to the right.

Make the bottom line the length of one character box if you want to insert one space, two to insert two spaces, and so forth.

What Doesn't Work

Making the gesture in two strokes.

Making the entire gesture within the box.

Drawing the vertical leg on the character box line

Drawing the gesture at an odd angle.





52

(continued)

In Text

Draw a short line down and, without lifting the pen, complete the gesture with a short line to the right (90 degrees), ending just below the text line where you want the space.

The beginning of the gesture sets the insertion point.

• For the best results, start the gesture in the middle of the line.

If you're inserting a space between characters, be precise about starting the gesture directly between them.

To insert more than one space repeat the gesture.

To insert repeat the gesture \implies To insert: repeat the gesture \implies To insert: repeat the gesture



В

Insert Tab Inserts a tab The text follo

Inserts a tab into a text document. The text following the gesture moves to the next tab stop.

- 📕 What Works
 - Draw a short line down and, without lifting the pen, complete the gesture with a short line to the right (90 degrees), ending just below the text line where you want the tab.
 - **2** Then, barely lifting the pen, make a flick right just below the horizontal line.

The flick should be parallel to and about the same length as the horizontal line.

Drawing this gesture through a character can split a word. What Doesn't Work

Making the gesture in three strokes. Pausing too long between strokes. Making the gesture at odd angles. Lifting the pen point too far from the screen. Making the flick in the wrong direction.

This gesture inserts a tab where you first put the pen down.

This gesture inserts a tab where you first put the pen down.





aby

D

Line Through (Pads)

Deletes translated characters from character boxes (multiple characters only).

Line through won't work on a single character. Use a pigtail to delete single characters.

📕 🛛 What Works

Draw a horizontal line from left to right though the letters you want to delete.





54



Lower Case Formats a word or selected characters as lowercase.

What Works

Starting within the word you want to make lowercase, draw a horizontal line left-to-right, through most of the word, then complete the gesture with a short line down (90 degrees).

The right angle should be made before you reach the end of the word.

What Doesn't Work	 A Contraction of the second sec
Making the gesture in two strokes.	
Making the gesture at odd angles.	
Underlining the words with the horizontal line instead of drawing it through the words.	LO <u>WERCASE</u>

CONVERTS TO LOWERGASE → CONVERTS TO lowercase



Menu Hides or displays the menu line.

If you want more room on the screen for documents, you can hide the menu line by making the M gesture in the document title line.

When you need the menus again, the M gesture in the title line redisplays them.

📕 🛛 What Works

Make a capital **M** in the title line of the document.

\checkmark	Read Me First <2>	
Document Edit Inse	t Case Format	
	and the second state of th	

What Doesn't Work

Making the ${\bf M}$ differently from the way you practiced it in Handwriting Customization.



New Line Inserts a line break into text without beginning a new paragraph.

What Works

- Draw a short line down and, without lifting the pen, complete the gesture with a short line to the left (90 degrees), ending just below the text line where you want the line break.
- **2** Then, barely lifting the pen, quickly make a flick left just below the horizontal line.

The flick should be parallel to and about the same length as the horizontal line.

This gesture inserts a line break where you first put the pen down. It does not start new paragraph.

📕 What Doesn't Work

Taking more than two strokes to make the gesture.

Pausing too long between strokes.

Making the gesture at odd angles.

Lifting the pen too far above the screen before making the flick.

1

Making the flick in the wrong direction.

This gesture inserts a line break where you first put the pen down. It does not start a new paragraph.

E



New Paragraph

Inserts a paragraph break in text.

📕 What Works

Draw a short line down and to the left where you want the paragraph break. The line to the left should be at 90 degrees to the line down, and it should end just below the text line.

The beginning of the gesture sets the insertion point.

Start in the white space between words and use one unbroken stroke.

What Doesn't Work

Not drawing the gesture at a right angle to the text line. break To st Making the gesture too much like a check. Starting the gesture at the bottom.



NOrmal Formats text as normal (plain), removing styles such as bold, italic, or underline.

What Works

Make an uppercase N over the word or selected text that you want to have appear in the normal format.

What Doesn't Work

Drawing over part of a word other than the one you want to format.

Going too much outside the selection that you want to format.



Making the N in a different way than you did in Handwriting Customization.

⇒ Changes formatted text to normal.



56



Pigtail Deletes individual characters in boxed pads, in text, or in text fields.

In Boxed Pads

Begin the line within the character box and extend it through the top of the box, ending with a loop.

The loop is the key to differentiating this gesture from a flick, so don't worry about the length of the "tail" you leave after the loop.



In Text

Draw a vertical line with a loop at the top.

- For the best results:
- Begin the gesture on the character you want to delete. (The place first touched by the pen tip determines what is deleted.)
- **2** Draw the vertical line, create the loop above the character, and end with a straight line.

delete a sinngle character

What Doesn't Work

Ending the gesture inside the character box. Starting the gesture below

the box.

 $|\mathbf{b}| \mathbf{c} \mathbf{j} \mathbf{s} \mathbf{t}|$

be **i**s t

What Doesn't Work

Ending with a circle. Beginning above the character. Starting with a loop. Drawing through several letters. Beginning below the character. Ending with a curved line.

	V-2 2020 2020 2010 2010 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	
	S	
	Contract Contract of the State	
	• Al 100 0 100000 al 200 0 10 - 0000, 000 Al 10 al	
	1 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	
	22.3.3.2.46.9.287 (2019) 20202 202000	
	TYTYCA	
	CONTRACTOR AND	
	(a) (b) (b) (b) (b) (b) (b) (b) (b) (b) (b	
	AN AND A REAL PROPERTY OF CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR	
	the second of the second product the second second	
	ACCOUNT, NOT COMPANY AND A	
	12 2 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	
	22 A.C.Y. S. S. A. S.	
	00-00.00.00 00.000.00.00.00.00.00.00.0007/01000000	
	The set of the second sec	
	State of the second s	
	TEVOO	
	LNOU	
	Contraction of the second s	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	THE STORE SECTOR PROCESSION OF SMALL PROPERTY.	
001100000	the second s	
and the second second		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	the second se	
N. 1996		
12.222	LWOO	
	1000	
	iwoo	
	1000	
	1000	
	e	
	_و	
	_و	
	twee	
	twoo	
	twee	
	twoo	
1	twoo	
	1	
1	1	
	t *** 0	
	1	
1	twoo	
	twoo twoo	
1	twoo	
	twoo twoo	
	twoo twoo	
1	twoo twoo	
	twoo twoo	
1	twoo twoo	
	twoo twoo	
	twoo twoo	
1	twoo twoo	
	twoo twoo	
1	twoo twoo twoo	
	two two two g	
	twoo twoo f	
	two two two	
	two two	
	two two two	
	two two two	
	two two	
	two two	
	two two	
	twod twod	



Plus Selects or deselects hyperlink buttons, icons on the Bookshelf, embedded documents, and other objects.

What Works

Make two strokes at right angles, keeping the pen tip close to the screen between strokes.

- **1** Start with the downward line.
- **2** Draw the horizontal line from either direction.

The gesture's lines should intersect directly over the selection, icon, or button you want to select or deselect.

What Doesn't Work

Making an X instead of a +.

Not lifting the pen enough to separate the two parts of the gesture.

Lifting the pen tip too far between drawing the two lines.

Pausing too long between strokes.

Hooks at the beginning or end of lines.



Press Begins a move.

Begins a drag-through selection of text. Sets an insertion point for keyboard insertion of text.

- To Move an Object or Selection
 - Touch the object or selection with the pen tip. Hold the pen there.
 - 2 Wait until you see a marquee around the object or selection. (It doesn't hurt to lift the pen once the selection is in move mode.)
 - **3** Drag the object or selection to its destination.

What Doesn't Work

Tapping (lifting the pen away from the screen too quickly).

Lifting the pen before the dashed line forms around the selection.

Lifting before you finish dragging the selection or object.



An object will be moved to the precise point on the screen where you lift the pen.

Selected text will be moved to the precise point on the screen where you lift the pen or to the space between words that's nearest to the point where you lift the pen.

📕 To Select Text

- **1** Touch the pen to the screen.
- **2** Wait for the first character to be highlighted.

3 Without lifting the pen, drag the pen to the last character you want to include in the selection.

Select more than one word. → Select more than one word.

- To Set an Insertion Point in Text
 - **1** Touch the screen between characters where you want to insert new text.
 - **2** Press until an I-beam appears.
 - **3** Then lift your pen away from the screen.

HIGHLIGHT → HIGHLIGHT

(continued)

- To Set an Insertion Point in Boxed Pads
 - **1** Touch the screen in the character box that you want to make current.
 - **2** Press until it's underscored (about one-half second).
 - **3** Then lift your pen away from the screen.



📕 🛛 Where It Works

Moves text selections. Moves documents in a table of contents. Moves documents and files in the Disk Manager. Moves Bookshelf icons.



Proof Opens a proof sheet that includes alternate spelling and translation choices for a word in text.

📕 🛛 What Works

Draw a capital **P** anywhere within the word or selection that you want to proof.

Proof thes word only

What Doesn't Work

Making most of the P above or below the line. Proof thes word only Proof thes word only

Drawing over a portion of a word other than the one that you want to proof.

Making the P in a different way than you did in Handwriting Customization.



Quadruple Tap Selects a paragraph in text.

What Works

- 1 Touch the screen firmly four times, barely lifting the pen between taps. Tap on the same spot on the screen each time.
- **2** Then lift the pen away from the screen.

This gesture lets you select a whole paragraph.

You must be careful not to lift the pen too far from the screen _____ between taps. Only lift the pen after quickly tapping four times.

After the paragraph is selected you can perform other actions, such as moving it, making it bold, or checking the spelling in it.



Lifting the pen too far between taps. Pausing between taps.

This gesture lets you select a whole paragraph.

You must be careful not to lift the pen too far from the screen between taps. Only lift the pen after quickly tapping four times.

After the paragraph is selected you can perform other actions, such as moving it, making it bold, or checking the spelling in it.

Question Mark Opens Quick Help.

Drawing a question mark on some areas of the screen gets you Quick Help about that object. For Quick Help about most things, tap the icon for the Help notebook (on the Bookshelf).

📕 🛛 What Works

Draw a question mark over title lines, icons, or bold option labels on the left side of option and dialogue sheets to see Quick Help for the object.

For best results, draw the question mark so that the loop joins the stem over the center of the target. Quickly draw the dot at the bottom of the stem.

What Doesn't Work

Drawing the question mark off the center of the object. Failing to dot the question mark.

Making an elongated stem.



Scratch Out

Deletes words in text; deletes one or more translated characters in boxed pads; deletes untranslated text in ruled pads.

What Works

Three horizontal lines back and forth on top of each other without lifting the pen (a very compressed Z.)



DELETING CELUED AND S.



Spell Checks the spelling of a document or section.

- Used in a title line the gesture checks the entire document.
- Used within a **document**, it checks from that point to the end.
- Used anywhere in a selection, it checks the entire selection.
- 📕 🛛 What Works

To check the spelling of a selected word or sentence, make a capital **9** over the selection.

Checks one selected w 6d.

Starts checking from any wSd.

Checks an entire Selection.

What Doesn't Work

Making the 9 so that most of the gesture is above or below the character line.

Making the **9** too much outside the selection.

Checks a selection.

аБу

Tab Shows or hides Notebook tabs.

What Works

With two strokes make an uppercase T in either the document title line or on the Table of Contents title.

- When a tab is showing, the T gesture hides the tab.
- When a tab is hidden, the T gesture displays it.

What Doesn't Work

Crossing the T so that it looks like a +.



Selects or activates what you touch with the pen; in text, selects one character.

📕 What Works

Tap

Touch the screen firmly, then quickly lift the pen.

Wait a moment for the PenPoint computer to carry out your instructions.

📕 🛛 Where It Works

Tap to choose menus, commands, and options. Tap to turn pages, open icons, select a character, or translate text.



What Doesn't Work

Pressing too hard.

- Tapping repeatedly.
- Coloring in the tap.

Hovering too close to the screen after tapping.



Tap Press Begins a copy.

- To Copy an Object or Selection
 - Tap and then quickly touch the object or selection with the pen tip. Hold the pen there. Tap and press in the same spot on the screen.
 - **2** Wait until you see a double marquee around the object or selection. (It doesn't hurt to lift the pen once the selection is in copy mode.)
 - **3** Drag the object or selection to its destination.

What Doesn't Work

Tapping repeatedly. Coloring in the tap. Lifting the pen too far after tapping. Dragging the selection or object before the double marquee appears.

A will appear bround your \longrightarrow A double marquee will appear around your selection double marquee.

The object will be copied to the precise point on the screen where you lift the pen.

Selected text will be copied to the precise point on the screen where you lift the pen or to the space between words that's nearest to the point where you lift the pen.

📕 Where It Works

Copies text selections. Copies documents in a table of contents. Copies documents and files in the Disk Manager. Copies Bookshelf icons. Copies hyperlink buttons.



Triple Tap Selects a sentence in text.

📕 What Works

Touch the screen firmly three times, barely lifting the pen between taps. Make the taps in the same spot on the screen. Then lift the pen away from the screen.

A triple tap has one function, only in text. Tapping three times selects a sentence. What Doesn't Work

Lifting the pen too far between taps. Pausing between taps.

A triple tap has one function, → only in text. Tapping three times selects a sentence.



On a hyperlink button, retargets the button to the current selection. On Notebook tabs, makes the tab label the same as the document title. On option or dialogue sheets, restores the sheet to its default size.




64

Upper Case Formats a word or selected characters as capital letters.

What Works

- Starting within the word or selection that you want to format, draw a horizontal line left-to-right through most of the word or selection, then complete the gesture with a short line up (90 degrees).
- **2** Barely raising the pen, quickly make a flick up beside it.
- The horizontal line should cross through the word or characters to be formatted.

The right angle should be made within the selection, or just before the last character you want to format.

What Doesn't Work

Making the gesture in more than two strokes.

Pausing too long between strokes.

Making the gesture at odd angles.

Underlining the words with the horizontal line instead of drawing it through the words.

Making the flick downward instead of upward, or at an odd angle.

Installing Applications and Devices

You use the **Installer** to add applications, fonts, device drivers, and services to your computer. (Device drivers are instructions for printers, plotters, and modems; services include electronic mail and information services.) You can also use the Installer to customize the Notebook by creating several versions of the basic handwriting profile, personal dictionary, and set of preferences that come with the PenPointTM operating system.

When you install something, PenPoint remembers which disk (volume) it's on. This location is called its home. When you copy something to home, you save all the changes you've made to the application or utility. For example, when you copy a printer driver to its home, you save all your setup information. Similarly, when you copy an application to its home, you save all the stationery for it, including any stationery you've customized.

If you no longer need to work with something you've installed, you can **deactivate** (temporarily remove) it and then **reactivate** it later when you're ready to use it again. If you've copied it to its home before deactivating it, when you reactivate it, all your settings will be the same.

Some software installs itself automatically when you insert the floppy disk in the disk drive. In that case, you'll see an installation message. If not, then use the Installer.

Finding Out What's Installed in the Notebook

When you first open the Installer, it shows you what's currently installed in the Notebook. You'll see a sheet for each category (such as Applications, Handwriting, and Fonts), which lists what's installed and tells you which one is currently in use.



To see the Handwriting Installer sheet:

- **1** Tap the Installer icon to open it.
 - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see a list of the other Installer sheets and tap to choose it.

y	Installed	▶ Handwriti	ng
Edit Hom	ie (Install F	fom Disk) (Gr	eate)
Name.	<u>Size</u>	Modified?	Current
Donna's	176,860	Yes	
Standard	176,860	No	
Tim's	176,860	Yes	ø

Name shows which profiles are installed.

Size tells you how big each one is.

Modified tells you if you've changed it since the last time you saved it.

Current shows which one is in use. Tap to choose another set.

2 Tap the close corner to close the Installer.

Installing an Application or Utility from Disk

You install all the applications and utilities you keep on your computer in the same way. To install something, open the Installer, turn to the appropriate sheet, and choose **Install from Disk**. PenPoint opens a Disk Manager for the connected disk and lists the items it finds on the disk for that category. Choose one by tapping it.



Installable Applicatio	ons
DISK5	
Volume Edit Show	DISK5
Name APBAISAL	Size 1 62,399
BUILDER	51,413
CALC	8,233
CHARI	36,920
CONKPI	62 A24
FaxViewer	180,471
MathPaper	9,991
Notebook Stationery	11,234
NotePaper	36,384 -5
Install Install & Eject	Close

To install an application:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive and insert the disk which contains the application you want to install.
- **2** Tap the Install icon to open the Installer.
 - ▲ If the Applications sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see the list of Installer sheets, and tap Applications to choose it.
- **3** Tap Install from Disk. You'll see a Disk Manager showing what's on the disk in the drive.
- **4** Tap to choose the application to install.
- **5** Tap Install & Eject to install the application.
 - ▲ Tap Install if you want to leave the disk in the drive so you can install something else.
 - Tap Close when you're done, or to close the Installer without installing anything.
- 6 PenPoint displays a message telling you that the application has been successfully installed. Tap OK to dismiss the message.

INSTALLING AN APPLICATION OR UTILITY FROM DISK

You install fonts, services, handwriting profiles, personal dictionaries, and preference sets in the same way you do applications. For example, to install a font, turn to the Fonts Installer sheet and choose **Install from Disk**. PenPoint searches the connected disk and lists the fonts it finds there. Tap the font you want to install, and then tap **Install** to add the font to your computer.

When you choose **Install from Disk** the Installer searches the disk for the category you've chosen and displays what it finds. If it doesn't find anything, the item may be in another directory on the disk. If this happens:

- Use the computer's Disk Manager to find the item on the disk (see chapter 11, Filing Documents for information about the Disk Manager).
- Open the Installer and choose the appropriate Installer sheet.
- Tap Install from Disk to display the Installer's Disk Manager.
- Drag the item from the computer's Disk Manager to a location on the Installer's Disk Manager.

If you don't have enough room in the Notebook to add something, PenPoint displays a message to this effect. See "Managing Memory" in chapter 12, (Learning More About PenPoint) for details.

INSTALLING AN APPLICATION OR UTILITY FROM DISK

Automatic Installation

BACKUP 001 contains the following services Name Size DotMates 44.2.79
Name Size DotMates 44.2.79
DotMatek 44,279
FLAP 13,468
PCL 48,351
PRSPOOL 1,880
Select an item, then tap the Install button.
Install Installed Elect Elect Close

Some disks install their software automatically when you insert the disk.

1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive and insert a disk.

You'll see a list of the disk contents, and one item may be preselected. You can install this item or tap to choose another one.

- ▲ To see items not visible in the list, scroll the list by drawing a flick up l or by tapping the scroll arrow in the scroll margin.
- 2 To install an item, tap Install & Eject.
 - ▲ If you want to install something else as well, choose **Install** to leave the disk in the drive.
 - ▲ Tap Eject when you're done, or to eject the disk without installing anything. (Tapping Close closes the automatic installer, but leaves the disk in the disk drive.)
- 3 PenPoint displays a message telling you that the item has been successfully installed. Tap OK to dismiss the message.

70

If you don't see an installation message when you insert the disk, use the Installer.

Creating Personalized Versions of Utilities

The first time you use Handwriting Customization, you rename the standard handwriting profile so you can save it and the changes you make to it under your name. If someone else regularly uses the computer, you can copy the standard profile from disk and modify and rename it for that person.

Similarly, you can create sets of preferences and dictionaries by modifying the standard one. If you need several different dictionaries or sets of preferences, you can copy an existing one and rename it, or make another copy of the standard one from the PenPoint disks and change it. For example, you might copy the standard dictionary, modify it to create a district sales office dictionary, and then copy and modify that one to include specific customer and contact names for your sales region.

CREATING PERSONALIZED VERSIONS OF UTILITIES

Installed > Dictionaries Edit Home (Install From Disk ...) (Create. Name Size Modified? Current Default No 1 NW Sales Reps 32 No **S** 勖 یک ۱ ? 4 D R Preferences Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer In Help

To copy a dictionary:

- **1** Tap the Installer icon to open it.
 - ▲ If the Dictionaries sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see the list of Installer sheets, and tap Dictionaries.
- **2** Tap Create.

Name:	SW SalesReps
Start From: ⊀	Desult NW Sales
Home Volume: 🗸	Sales & Pied Disk1

3 Write in a name.

You can leave the name field blank, and PenPoint will use the name of the dictionary in the Start From field and add the number 1 to it, so Dictionary becomes Dictionary 1.

- **4** Tap the name of the dictionary on which you want to base the new one.
- **5** Tap to choose a **Home Volume**.

PenPoint matches the dictionary to its home volume.

To choose a different home for the new dictionary, insert a disk. Tap to choose the new volume.

6 Tap Create & Close.

There's a shortcut for creating new
handwriting profiles, dictionaries or
preference sets: Draw a caret ${\textstyle\bigwedge}$ over the
installed item on which you want to base
the new version, and then assign a name
and home volume on the Create dialog.

CREATING PERSONALIZED VERSIONS OF UTILITIES

If you base a new version of your preferences or the personal dictionary on the one you're currently using, it will contain any changes you've made to the standard ones. If you want to start fresh, connect the computer to a disk drive and use the Installer to copy the standard preference set or dictionary from the PenPoint disk.

Once you've made a copy under a new name, you can customize it. To learn how to:

- Customize the standard handwriting profile, read "Customizing Your Writing" in chapter 6 (Writing in the Notebook).
- Add words to the personal dictionary, read "Adding Word to the Dictionary" in chapter 5 (Creating and Using Documents).
- Set preferences, see "Customizing the Notebook" in chapter 9 (Managing the Notebook).

Saving Your Changes

The Installer keeps track of any modifications to things you've installed. To save these changes copy them to the home volume. If you don't want to keep the changes, restore an earlier version by updating it from home.



To save changes to your handwriting profile:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- **2** Tap the Installer icon to open it.
 - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see the list of Installer sheets, and tap Handwriting.

The **Modified** column tells you whether you've modified your profile since the last time you saved it to disk.

- **3** To save new changes, select your profile and choose **Copy to Home** from the Home menu.
 - ▲ To restore an earlier version choose Update from Home.

PenPoint prompts you for the home disk.

- ▲ (When you connect the home disk, you may see the automatic installation dialog. Tap **Cancel** to dismiss it.)
- **4** After saving or updating the profile, PenPoint displays a message telling you the command has been carried out. Tap **OK** to dismiss the message.

When you make changes to a service or application, be sure to save them to disk. (You won't see a **Modified** column to remind you that you've changed something).

INSTALLING APPLICATIONS AND DEVICES

SAVING YOUR CHANGES

If you want to rename something before saving it, you rename it in the usual way, by drawing a circle \circ on it and changing it in the edit pad. PenPoint considers renaming something a modification of it.

Here's a shortcut for copying an installed item to its home: draw an H on the name of an item in the Installer.

Deactivating Applications and Utilities

You can use the memory in your computer most efficiently by deactivating the applications, handwriting profiles, and services you're not using. Deactivating them is a way of temporarily removing them. For example, you might deactivate the applications and services you won't be using on a trip.

When you deactivate something PenPoint deletes it from the Notebook, but leaves a placeholder and remembers its home. When you're ready to use it again, you can reactivate it in one step instead of having to reinstall it completely. Make sure you've copied the most recent version to its home before you deactivate anything.

	Installed Applic	ations
Edit	Home Unstall From Dis	K]
Nan	u Deac•Wate	Size
Cloc	Copy to Home	25,549
Han	d Update From Home	37,351
Lette	er Practice	3,666
P ₆ /s	onal Dictionary	3,672
S-SI	not	17,164

To deactivate an application:

- **1** Tap the Installer icon to open it.
 - ▲ If the Applications sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see the list of Installer sheets, and tap Applications.
- **2** Tap the name of the application you want to deactivate.
- **3** Choose **Deactivate** from the Home menu to remove the application but leave a placeholder for it.
 - Make sure you've copied the most recent version to its home first.

To delete something from the computer, draw a cross out χ on it. Since deleting it removes its placeholder, you'll need to reinstall it when you're ready to use it again.

INSTALLING APPLICATIONS AND DEVICES

DEACTIVATING APPLICATIONS AND UTILITIES

When you choose **Deactivate**, PenPoint changes the menu command to **Reactivate**. When the computer is connected to a disk drive with the home disk in it, you can choose **Reactivate** to reinstall something.

When you deactivate an application, PenPoint tells you how many documents are currently using the application. If you're working on one of those documents, save your recent changes by choosing **Checkpoint** from the Document menu or by turning to another page in the Notebook before deactivating the application. To save the changes to floating documents, close them.

If you turn to a document after you've deactivated its application, PenPoint asks you if you want to reactivate the application. If you tap **OK**, PenPoint prompts you for the home disk and then automatically reinstalls the application. (You may see the automatic installation dialog. Dismiss it by tapping the close corner.) When the application has been installed, the document appears on the page.

Deactivating Fonts

The Fonts Installer sheet shows you which fonts you've chosen from the Fonts Preferences sheet for fields and PenPoint text, and the fonts you've installed for styling text. In addition to these fonts, you'll see two symbol fonts, which PenPoint uses to display parts of the Notebook.

Don't delete or deactivate the symbol fonts, since the Notebook and your applications probably need them. If you want to free up memory in your computer, you can delete or deactivate all but one of the other fonts.

Changing the Home Volume

At times you may find it convenient to set a different home volume. For example, you might decide to consolidate dictionaries from different floppy disks to a single disk. If you want to copy something to its new home as soon as you change it, make sure the computer is connected to a disk drive.

Edit Home (install F	Fom Disk) (Cr	eate)
Name	Size	Modified?	Current
Default	1	No	S.
Int'l Inventory	1	Yes	
Salas Rep	1	Yes	

Name:	Sales Rep
Home Volu	me: Contacts
	✓ Sales&Prod
Home Path	: Penpoint/PDict/Sales Rep

To change the home for your dictionary from one floppy disk to another:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- **2** Tap the Installer icon to open it.
 - ▲ If the Dictionaries sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see the list of Installer sheets, and tap Dictionaries.
- Draw a check ✓ on the dictionary name.
- **3** Insert the floppy disk which will be the new home for the dictionary.
- **4** When you insert the disk, PenPoint automatically selects it as the Home Volume. (If the appropriate volume isn't selected, tap it to choose it.)
- 5 Tap Apply & Close.

You can also set a new home volume by tapping the item you want and choosing **Options** from the Edit menu. When you change the home, PenPoint creates a new **home path** to its new location.

To change an item's home volume and copy it there in one step, open the Disk Manager and copy the item from the Installer sheet to a location on the Disk Manager.

Setting Up Printers

Before you can use a printer you need to install its driver with the Installer and then set options for it with Printers (located in Tools).

For information about connecting a printer to your computer, see chapter 13, Setting Up Your Computer. Also, consult the guide that comes with your equipment for specific settings you should use. To find out how to install a TOPS printer refer to *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

Connecting a Printer

When you've installed the printer driver and attached the printer you're ready to set options (such as the model and the printer port) with the Printers sheet. You can save all of this setup information to the home volume so that you don't have to redo it each time you use the printer. (Tap to select the printer driver on the Services Installer sheet and choose **Copy to Home**.)



To set up a printer:

- **1** Install the printer driver with the Installer.
- 2 Tap the Tools icon on the Bookshelf to open it, and then tap the Printers icon.

You'll see the Printers sheet. PenPoint lists by name any printers you've previously added.



Model > Epeon FX-80	
Model > Epson FX-80	

- **3** Choose Add from the Edit menu.
- **4** Write in a name for the new printer.
- **5** Choose the type of printer you're adding from the **Type** pop-up list.
- Choose the port to which you'll connect the printer from the Port pop-up list.
- 7 Tap OK to accept these settings.

After adding the printer, PenPoint displays another set of options so you can choose the appropriate model.

- 8 Tap the name of the printer model you're adding from the Model pop-up list.
- **9** Tap OK to add the printer to the list of available printers.

You have two choices for the printer port: Printer and BaseStation port (the Option Slot is reserved for serial communications). To connect the printer to:

- the PenPoint computer directly, choose Printer port.
- the Quick Charger, choose the Basestation port or Printer port according to which BaseStation connector you plan to use.

SETTING UP PRINTERS

Setting Printer Options

PenPoint lists the printer's name and type on the Printers sheet in Tools. The setup requirements for each printer may vary, so to complete the setup information, choose the appropriate printer options. For example, on the:

- Serial sheet, set options for how the data will be sent, such as the flow control or baud rate (Consult the manual that comes with your equipment for these specifications.)
- Options sheet, set options for the printer's capabilities, such as paper handling.



To set the serial options:

- 1 On the Printers sheet, tap the Enabled checkbox so that PenPoint can set options for the printer.
- **2** Draw a check \checkmark on the name of the printer to see the option sheets.
 - ▲ If the Serial sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to display a list of option sheets and tap Serial.

PenPoint lists the serial port you've previously chosen on the Add Printers sheet.

3 Tap to see the different choices in each category, tap to choose the appropriate ones.

Consult the guide that comes with your printer for the appropriate setting.

4 Tap Apply and Close.

USING PENPOINT SETTING UP PRINTERS



To set specific printer options:

- 1 On the Printers sheet, tap the Enabled checkbox so that PenPoint can set options for the printer.
- **2** Draw a check \checkmark on the name of the printer to see the option sheets.
 - ▲ If the Printers sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to display a list of option sheets and tap Printers.

PenPoint lists the printer model and the port to which you'll attach it.

- **3** Tap to see the different options. Then tap to choose the appropriate ones.
- 4 Tap Apply and Close.

Printing a Document

When you're ready to print, first enable the printer from the Print dialog or the Out box. (Changing it in one place automatically changes it in the other.) To print a document:

- Choose Print from the Document menu and choose the printer you want to use.
- Choose Yes from the Printer Enabled category if you're connected to a printer; choose No to place the document in the Out box so you can print it at a later time.

After you enable a printer and connect it to the PenPoint computer, PenPoint automatically begins to print documents it finds in the Out box. If you want to do something else with the computer first, deactivate the printer by deselecting **Enabled** in the Out box before you connect the printer to the computer. When you're ready to print, choose **Enabled** again.

To find out more about printing a document, read chapter 10, Printing, Sending and Receiving Documents.

Creating and Using Documents

When you install an application in your Notebook, the PenPointTM operating system automatically places **stationery** for that application in the Stationery notebook and on the Table of Contents' Create menu.

The stationery is like a box of paper that never runs out. To create a new document you start at the Table of Contents and choose a piece of stationery from the Create menu. If you find that you routinely use a few kinds of stationery, you can customize the Create menu by changing settings in the Stationery notebook.

Most of the time you'll work with a full-page document. But at times you may want to work with two documents at the same time, for example to compare information. You do this by **floating** one document above another. Floating a document temporarily detaches it from its place in the Notebook. When you're finished working with it, you close the floating document, and it returns to its place in the Notebook.

While working on one type of document, you may want to add information using a different application. For example you might add a drawing to a written report. You can do this by **embedding** a second piece of stationery in your document. You can also prepare documents separately and combine them later into one document.

Using the Create Menu to Create a Document

Your PenPoint computer comes with some stationery already on the Create menu. To create a new document from the menu:

Current Prod		- Pade
	Memo Mukitast	
🖹 Inventory	Section	
🗋 Stand ard	Order Form	4
] Proposed Ne	w Products	
🗋 New Proc	uct lde as	6
🖹 Capers		
🔄 🖹 Chili Mixe	S	8
] Sales		
🖹 Sales by	Region	
📄 🖹 New Hire	S	
Customers		
🖹 Chain Sto	res	
🔄 🖹 Complair	ts to Action	
] New Bottle D	Design	
🔄 🖹 Salsa/Co	nd ime nts	
Package	Design Letter	
Proposed	New Design (3/2/91)	
ම් Bottle Design ාය	Sketch	
l∐ Revised Botti ⊐⊾	e FAX	
CONTRACT		
New Product	Draft	

- 1 In the Table of Contents, tap to see the Create menu.
- **2** Tap to choose a piece of stationery.
 - PenPoint inserts the new document after the current selection or, if there's no selection, at the end of the Table of Contents.

USING THE CREATE MENU TO CREATE A DOCUMENT

As a shortcut to using the Create menu, you can draw a caret \wedge on the Table of Contents with the point of the caret where you want the new document to go. The PenPoint operating system displays the pop-up Create menu floating over the Table of Contents. When you tap to choose a piece of stationery PenPoint inserts it where you positioned the caret.



When you create a new document, PenPoint gives it the name of its stationery as a title, for example MiniText. If you create another document using the same stationery, PenPoint adds a number to the title, so that a second MiniText document would be called MiniText 1, and the third MiniText 2.

You can rename the document at any time. Tap the title to select it and draw a circle \circ over it to bring up the edit pad. Or, you can choose the **Rename** command from the Edit menu. For a more detailed explanation, read "Renaming a Document" later in this chapter.

Using the Stationery Notebook to Create a Document

The Bookshelf contains an icon labeled Stationery. This is the Stationery notebook, which holds all the stationery installed on the PenPoint computer. Each application has a section that contains the stationery that goes with the application. You can flip through the notebook to see the different kinds of stationery, or you can go directly to a specific page by tapping its page number.

Use the Stationery notebook to:

- Create new documents
- Choose which stationery to put on the Create menu
- Add customized stationery (explained in "Creating Customized Stationery" later in this chapter).



To create a document:

- 1 Start from the Notebook Table of Contents.
- **2** Tap the Stationery icon on the Bookshelf to open the Stationery notebook.
- **3** Tap press **)** on the name of the stationery you want to copy.
- **4** When you see the double marquee, (an animated dashed line surrounding the title), drag it where you want it to appear in the Notebook Table of Contents.

The PenPoint operating system inserts the new document where you lift your pen.

USING PENPOINT

USING THE STATIONERY NOTEBOOK TO CREATE A DOCUMENT

Adding Stationery to the Create Menu

You can use the Stationery notebook to add to the Create menu stationery that you use frequently, so it's more accessible.

🖞 New Product	Name.	Page	Menu	Ŷ
	MiniText	2	eduo Enge	IJ
Statute:	MiniText	3	EÓ.	L
HERE CONTRACTORS	Business	4	D	20 ml
	🗋 Merno		RÍ -	ants
	FaxViewer	6		Γ
	Fax Letter	7		
	Drawing Paper	8		
	🕑 Drawing Paper	9		<u>л</u>
0100				
			<i>.</i>	

- **1** Tap the Stationery icon on the Bookshelf to open the Stationery notebook.
- **2** To add stationery to the Create menu, tap an empty box.
 - ▲ You'll see a check mark.

To remove the check mark, tap again.

Creating Stationery

You can use the stationery from the Stationery notebook as it is set up, or you can change the margins, the font, and other options. If you routinely make the same format changes, you might want to customize a piece of stationery and add it to the Stationery notebook. For example, you might create stationery for a weekly memo that would have preset margins and a header with spaces for the names of the recipients and the subject of the memo.

Creating Customized Stationery

You can customize stationery by adding text or graphics to it and changing options on the Document or Text option sheets. For example, to change the font for the Memo stationery:



Name	Page	Menu
MiniText		
🗎 Memo 1		Đ
MiniText		Ø
🖹 Business		E2
🖹 Me mo		RÓ
FaxViewer	7	
Fax Letter		
Drawing Paper	9	

- **1** Tap the Stationery icon on the Bookshelf to open the Stationery notebook, where you create the new piece of stationery.
- **2** Copy the stationery you want to customize:

Tap press \rightarrow on the name of the stationery you want to copy and drag it to a location in the same section.

- You can rename the new stationery. (To find out how to rename a document, read "Renaming a Document" in this chapter.)
- **3** Turn to the new document in the Stationery notebook by tapping its page number.

USING PENPOINT

CREATING STATIONERY



- 4 Choose Select All from the Edit menu to select the text in the document.
- 5 Draw a ✓ on the selection to display the Text option sheets.
 - ▲ If the Character option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line of the option sheet to display the list of sheets and tap Character.
- 6 Tap the current choice in the Font category on the Character option sheet and tap to select a font.
- 7 Tap Apply & Close.

Instead of copying the stationery, you can create a new piece of stationery to customize by choosing it from the Create menu.

- On the Stationery table of contents, draw a caret ∧ in the section where you want the new stationery to go.
- Tap to choose a piece of stationery from the pop-up Create menu.

Once you've created the new piece of stationery, you can further modify it by turning to it in the Stationery notebook and making the necessary changes using the document option sheets.

Managing the Stationery Notebook

In managing the Stationery notebook, you may want to rename stationery, save stationery you've customized, and delete stationery you no longer need.

To rename stationery:

• Draw a circle \circ over the title to display the edit pad and change the title.

To back up stationery that you've customized so you can reinstall it if necessary:

- Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- Tap the Installer icon on the Bookshelf to open it.
- From the Applications sheet in the Installer, tap to select the application that created the stationery. (If the Applications sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line to see the list of Install sheets, and tap Applications.)
- Choose Copy to Home from the Home menu.

Copying the application to disk automatically copies all the stationery that's in the application's section.

in stationery. Start from

To quickly back up stationery: Start from the Stationery notebook table of contents, tap the section title to select all the stationery in the section, and draw an **H** on it. Use the same gesture, to back up a single piece of stationery.

MANAGING THE STATIONERY NOTEBOOK

Deleting or Purging Stationery

When you delete stationery you have a choice of removing it from the Stationery notebook and keeping a backup copy on the home disk or removing it from both places by **purging** it.

For example, if you created a template for your annual report, you might delete it from the Stationery notebook, but keep a backup copy on the home disk so you can use it again next year. If, however, you customized stationery for a one-time project that ended, you might purge it.

/ Statione	ery: Contents			(1)	
Name	Pa	ge	Menu	Ŷ	
MiniText					L
🕒 MiniText			Ø		Cont
Business			Ø		ents
🗅 🕅 Kemo			Ø		٢
DrawingPaper					
Drawing Paper			Ø	, ji,	
Preferences Tools Statio	Note from 7	: Table	nı. OlCan		
Preferences Tools Statio	Note from 7 OK to dek Statione ry	i Table ete h ?	rii. Of Con lemo fr e	tents om	
Piefeiences Tools Statio	Note from 7 OK to dele Stationeny You can a document, from its dis from Statio	te M ste M ste M st Ho sk Ho	Of Can Of Can Nurge thi ch delet ome as '	is is well a	*

To delete or purge stationery:

- From the Stationery table of contents, draw a cross-out X over the title of the stationery you wish to remove.
 - ▲ You see a note asking you if it's OK to delete the stationery.
- **2** Tap **Delete** to remove the stationery from the Stationery notebook but keep it on the home disk.

Tap **Purge** to remove it permanently from both places.

If you decide later that you want to use stationery you've deleted, you can reinstall the application. Reinstalling the application copies the stationery that you've saved on the home disk back into the Stationery notebook. (Chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices tells you how to reinstall applications.)

To ensure that you'll always be able to use an installed application, each application has a few pieces of stationery that you cannot delete. If you try to delete them, you see a message asking you to remove them by deinstalling the application. (Deinstalling an application also removes its stationery.)

Scrolling a Document

If a document doesn't fit on the screen all at once you can use **flicks** to navigate within the document and bring different portions into view. You draw flicks in the body of the document to scroll the document to the beginning, end, or to any point in between.

Drawing flicks is like using the eraser on a pencil to move parts of a page into view. You pull the page toward you (flick down) to see what's at the top, or push it away (flick up) to see what's on the bottom.



USING PENPOINT

SCROLLING A DOCUMENT

New Product I	deas <6	5
Document Edit Insert Case Forma	ŧ	
Eggplant dip (We'll need a catchy name for this babaganoush that I think will stan shelf storage. It involves roasting can do in bulk) and then smashing lemon, olive oil and spices. We ou problems with the oil separating o which is very unappetizing, but I's binding agent to solve this.) This is a variation on d up well to long-term the eggplants (which we them with garlic, urntly have some ut to the top of the jar, m sure we can find a	Contents Qurent Prod
Southwestern curry sauce This is essentially a barbecue sauce barbecuing vegetables like eggpla other squash has become very por You'd spread this curry sauce ove grill them. Pete in the test kitchens way to make sure the sauce is thic vegetables yet thin enough to look	e. Grilling or nt and zucchini and uular in the West lately. r the vegetables as you : came up with a clever k enough to stay on the : appealing.	Proposed New Products
Eggplant paste We really need a new name for th great product. It's eggplant puree : other spices in a tube to use in sau and so forth. Remember what a hi tube was and how angry the boss down? I think this is our chance for	is one, but it's actually a mixed with garlic and ces, casseroles, dips t that tomato paste in a was that we'd turned it or a big seller.	a the Customers New Br
Eg. plant steaks/entrees Prevaring eggplant is tedious wor the s is no ready-to-cook eggplan	Ne Document Edit Insert C	w Product Idees < <u><6></u> ase Format
the narket Frozen or vacuum-pa stes is could be used as a substitu sut its in many recipes. In fact, w step further and include sauces fo "en plant helper" with a healthy ? # Help Preferences Tools Stationery Dist	CC: I est Kitch Dick I was fiddling around wi recipes the other day and might try to market egg vegetable. It's cheap to p storage, and various pre- well on the shelf. I think especially popular in the where they're rediscover what you think Enriq	th some of my mother's old 11 came up with several ways we lant which is a good stable frow and it survives well in cldo parations of it seem to hold up these new products might be Southwest and in California ing vegetables. Let me know ue
	Eggplant dip (We'll need a catchy nar babaganoush that I think shelf storage. It involves can do in bulk) and then lemon, olive oil and spic problems with the oil se which is very unappetizi binding agent to solve th	ne for this.) This is a variation on will stand up well to long-term roasting the eggplants (which we smashing them with garlic, ves. We cumtly have some parating out to the top of the jar, ng, but I'm sure we can find a nis.
	Southwestern curry sa This is essentially a barb barbecuing vegetables li other squash has becomy You'd spread this curry grill them. Pete in the tes way to make sure the sa vegetables yet thin enou	uce we cue sauce. Grilling or ke eggplant and zucchini and e very popular in the West lately. sauce over the vegetables as you st kitchens came up with a clever uce is thick enough to stay on the gh to look appealing.
\searrow	Eggplant paste	
,	? ✓ 🔀 Help Preferences Tools Sta	tonery Disks Keyboard Installer In Out

----- Flick down | on the line to bring it to the bottom of the screen.

To scroll to the beginning or end of a document:

- Draw a double-flick down || anywhere in the document to go to the beginning of a document.
- Draw a double-flick up || to go to the end of a document.

SCROLLING A DOCUMENT

The scroll margin is useful for gauging your location in the document, and for jumping to a specific location in it. You may find it easier to drag the **scroll** handle to go to a specific part of the document. For example, if you were on page one of a four-page report, to get to the third page, you could drag the scroll handle about three-quarters of the way down the margin.



SCROLLING A DOCUMENT

The scroll arrows let you move either one line at a time or in a continuous scroll:

- Tap the bottom arrow to see more of the page below.
- Tap the top arrow to see more of the page at the top.
- Press either arrow to scroll the page continuously.

You can scroll the document one screenful at a time by tapping in the scroll margin. Tap above the scroll handle to see more of the document that lies off the top of the screen; tap below it to see more of the document off the bottom.

Floating a Document

When you float a page the PenPoint operating system temporarily detaches it from its place in the Notebook and puts it on top of the current page. It continues to float where you can see it even as you move around the Notebook, until you close it. When you close it, it returns to its place in the Notebook.

Floating one document above another allows you to compare both documents and work with them without flipping between pages.

Before floating a document, you must first select the option for floating documents in the Preferences option sheets. You need to set this option only once to be able to float documents any time you use your PenPoint computer.

🛛 Con	inlaints to Action	
New B	Preterences > Sateguards	14
🗋 Sal	Warning Beep: On	
🗋 Nev		16
Pro	Floating Documents: 🖌 Allowed	17
	Not Allowe	d i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i
	Zooming Documents: Allowed	
	✓ Not Allows	d
	Auto Shut Off: Yes	
	No	
	<u> </u>	
	Apply Apply & Close Close	
	RATE CONSISTER FOR THE PRODUCT OF THE PROPERTY	and the states in the

To set the floating option:

- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open Preferences.
 - ▲ If the Safeguards sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Safeguards from the list.
- 2 Tap Allowed for Floating Documents.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

FLOATING A DOCUMENT

If you're working on the Table of Contents and want to see what's in a document, you can float the document over the Table of Contents and then close it to put it back in place in the Notebook.



To float a document, double-tap **.**) its page number or tab.

▲ To stop floating a document, tap its close corner. It returns to its place in the Notebook.

Sometimes you may want to float a document above the one you're working on, for example to copy information between them. To do so:

- Temporarily float the Table of Contents by double tapping y its tab.
- Double-tap , the page number of the document you want to float.

If you're working with several floating documents, and the one you want to work with next is partially hidden, tap its title line to bring it to the front.

Moving and Resizing Floating Documents

When you float a document, it sometimes covers up the information you want to see. When this happens, you can move or resize the document.



The executive never got a chance to try our product.



To move a floating document:

- 1 Press > the title line. Wait until the document border darkens. This tells you it's ready to be moved.
- 2 Drag it to its new location.

To resize a floating document:

Drag the corner handle to the right to widen it; down to lengthen it; or diagonally to expand or reduce it in both directions.

▲ If you reopen a floating document after resizing or moving it, PenPoint displays it as you last left it.

To find out more about resizing floating objects, see chapter 2, Fundamentals.
Zooming a Document

When you want to use the entire screen area to display a document, you can zoom a floating document so that it covers the tabs, the title, and the menu line. When you unzoom it, it returns to its previous size.

Before zooming a document, you must first choose the zoom option. You need to set this option only once to be able to zoom documents any time you use your PenPoint computer.



To set the zoom preference:

- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open Preferences.
 - If the Safeguards sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow at the top to see the list and choose Safeguards.
- 2 Tap Allowed for Zooming Documents.
- 3 Tap Apply & Close.

When you turn on zooming, the PenPoint operating system adds a close corner to the Notebook. In general you won't need to close the Notebook unless you're restoring a backup copy of it, or you're working with several Notebooks in your PenPoint computer. You'll find more on restoring the Notebook in chapter 11, Filing Documents, and more on working with multiple notebooks in chapter 12, Learning More About PenPoint.

CREATING AND USING DOCUMENTS

ZOOMING A DOCUMENT

/	Package Design Letter <17:	X
Document E	dit Insert Case Format	
Ms. Elena H FastPak Des 3535 Missic	luerta ign n St.	Ŷ
Houston TX		constantion of
RE: New pa	Document Edit Insert Case Format	Contraction of the local division of the loc
	Dear Ms. Huerta:	and an and an and an
Dear Ms. Hi	M_{S} , H ₁ This is our agreement concerning your involvement in a new bottle design for	
We need a r	New World Foods, Inc.	Statistics of
conuments.	1. You agree to supply design services	in the second
Recently, ar of our samp our line. He	and technical drawings to New World. The designs and drawings become the property of New World upon payment	
his son ran i	tor your services.	

To zoom a document:

- 1 Draw a flick up l on the title line. Make sure the flick begins in the title line.
 - ▲ To return the page to its normal size, draw a flick down | on its title line.

Using Documents

While working with a document in the Notebook you may want to:

- Rename it with a more useful title.
- Save your recent changes.
- Go back to an earlier version.
- Delete a document you no longer need.

Renaming a Document

When you create a new document the PenPoint operating system gives it the name of its stationery. To give it a more useful name:

- From the Table of Contents, tap to select the title, and choose **Rename** from the Edit menu. Or, select the title and draw a circle o to display an edit pad and change the name there.
- From the document, draw a circle o on the document title line and change the title in the edit pad.

You can also change the title on the Title & Info document option sheet. You draw a check \checkmark on the document title line to display the document option sheets; then you can change the title on the Title & Info sheet.

Changing the title in one place automatically changes it in the others. For example, if you edit the name of a document on the Table of Contents, the name also changes on the tab. However, if you edit the tab label, the title of the tab doesn't automatically change when you next rename the document.

USING DOCUMENTS

Note book: Contents	<1 >
Document Edit Create View Show Sort	
Name.	Page.
Current Products	² ର
	3 14
UPropose <u>New Hires</u>	4
New OK Olear Cancel	5 0
	.6 a
	o di
	°, G
	3 3 10 5
	11 0 11



To rename a document from the Table of Contents:

- **1** Draw a circle \circ on the title to bring up the edit pad.
- **2** Tap the Clear button to clear the pad and then write in a new title.
 - Or, you can edit the title in the edit pad.

3 If you need more room to write, drag the corner handle to the right to widen the edit pad, down to lengthen, or diagonally to expand it in both directions.



- **4** Tap the OK button to translate the new title in the edit pad; tap OK again to transfer the title to the page.
 - ▲ Tap the **Cancel** button to close the pad without renaming the title.

For more information about editing in pads or fields, see "Editing Text in Edit Pads" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

Saving and Deleting Documents

The PenPoint operating system automatically saves the document each time you turn to another page of the Notebook. To save your changes without turning the page, choose **Checkpoint** from the Document menu. You might want to do this periodically so that if you have to restart the computer, you won't lose your most recent changes.

Note that PenPoint saves recent changes only if there's nothing selected in the document. So tap to undo any selection before turning the page or using **Checkpoint**.

If you make a change that you don't want to keep, you can go back to an earlier version by choosing **Revert** from the Document menu. PenPoint changes the document back to what it was before you last turned the page or chose **Checkpoint**.

To manage your Notebook efficiently, you can remove documents you no longer need. If you want to use a document at some future date, move it to a floppy or hard disk instead of deleting it. You can find out how to make backup versions in chapter 11, Filing Documents. If you know you'll never need a document again, you can delete it.



To delete a document:

- Draw a cross-out X on the title in the Table of Contents
 - ▲ Or, select the document in the Table of Contents and choose **Delete** from the Edit menu.
- 2 When you delete a document, PenPoint asks you to confirm the command. To go ahead, tap OK.
 - ▲ To change your mind, tap Cancel.

104

You can also delete a document by drawing a cross out χ on the document title line.

Embedding a New Document

PenPoint allows you to embed one document inside another. For example, you can work with another application such as a drawing or spreadsheet application, within a text document. There are two ways to create a compound document:

- Create a new document within an existing document.
- Move or copy an existing document into another document.



To create a new document inside an existing one:

- 1 Start from the document in which you want to embed another.
- 2 Draw the embedded document gesture (double caret) ∧ where you want the new document to go.

You'll see the pop-up Create menu.

3 Tap to select the stationery you want to use.

PenPoint embeds a new document of the appropriate type where you drew the tip of the gesture. You can work in it in the usual ways.

- ▲ To open the document, tap the icon.
- ▲ To close the document, tap the close corner.
- ▲ To delete the document, draw a cross out X on the title line if it's open, or on the icon if it's closed.

105

Embedding an Existing Document

You may find it more convenient to work on documents separately until you're ready to assemble them, at which point you can copy or move one document into another.



To embed a document in another document:

- **1** Start from the document in which you want to embed another.
- **2** Double tap **:**) the Contents tab to float the Table of Contents.

3 Press **>** on the title of the second document and drag it to the place where you want it in the first document.

 Notice that the document you moved is no longer listed on the Table of Contents.

Embedding a Tool

Sometimes it's useful to embed a tool in a document. For example, you might embed the clock in a document so that it will show the date and time when you print the document. To do so, copy the clock from Tools to a location in the document. Tap to open the clock and then turn off the borders by drawing a B on the clock.

Working with Embedded Documents

Setting Document Options

You set document options for an embedded document in the usual way by drawing a check \checkmark on the document title line.

If the title line is hidden, draw a check tap \checkmark anywhere on the document to see the option sheets.

Moving an Embedded Document

You can move an embedded document to another location in the same document by dragging it. Close the document by tapping the close corner. Then press > the icon until you see the marquee, and drag it to another place in the document.

To move an embedded document to a different document, float the destination document, press y the icon until you see the marquee, and then drag it to the new location.

Making an Embedded Document a Full-page Document

You can reverse the procedure and split compound documents into two separate documents. For example, if you decide you don't need to illustrate sales results with a graph, you might want to remove the graph from the report but keep the graph in the Notebook.

To move an embedded document to a separate page, close the embedded document if it's open, press and hold the icon until you see the marquee, turn to the Table of Contents, and drag the document to a location on the Table of Contents. The document goes to the point where you lift the pen from the Table of Contents. For details on moving a document to the Table of Contents, read "Rearranging the Notebook" in chapter 9, Managing the Notebook.

WORKING WITH EMBEDDED DOCUMENTS

Floating an Embedded Document

You can decide whether to float the embedded document on the page so that when it's open it overlaps what lies beneath it. Or, you can position it so that the text of the primary document flows around it. Floating an embedded document is useful if you want to be able to refer to it while you work in another part of the primary document. To choose those options:



To float an embedded document:

- Draw a check ✓ on the icon of the embedded document to display the option sheet. Close the document first to see the icon if you need to.
- 2 If you plan to work with the document where you inserted it, choose In Place from the Open category.

Choose **Popup** to see information in the embedded document while working in another part of the larger document.

3 Tap Apply & Close.

If you choose **Popup** for an embedded document it floats only while you work with the container document. If you turn the page, the floating embedded document closes and returns to the location where you embedded it.

However, if you choose In Place for an embedded document and later float it by double-tapping its title line, PenPoint treats it just as any floating document; when you turn to a different page, it floats on the new page.

108

WORKING WITH EMBEDDED DOCUMENTS

Printing an Embedded Document

When you print the container document, usually only the portion of the embedded document that shows on the screen gets printed. You can control how much of the embedded document PenPoint prints by resizing it before printing. To print the entire document regardless of how much is showing, or to start it on a new page, choose the appropriate Formatting option from the embedded document's Print Setup Layout sheet.

/	Proposed New Design (3/2/91) <18	>
Document E	dit Insert Case Format	
Dear Mr. Ho	opkins:	Ŷ
11		
the New Wo	rld Food's bottle design. They recommend a	Sm
common res	in, polyethylene terephthalate (PET), which	ems
is recyclable	, lightweight, and achieves your breaking	E
advantage of	f giving us greater design flexibility.	me m
		Pipo
E E	Bottle Design Sketch	Inds
Document E	dit Grid Order Options	Pro
Checkpoint Revert	Duint Petrus A. Lauraut	pos
Print.	Print detup 🖡 Layout	D N
Print Setup	Orientation: Portrait	
Seind	Paper Size: VS Standard	
About	Top Margin:	10 S
Erase 1.00		0 90 10
Trouten	Bottom Mangin:	C C
	<u>1.00</u> in	1 oisn
I faxed you	Left Margin:	Ters
received hi		Nev
Bevised B	Bight Mamin	/ Bot
We can go		
next Tuesd Ecomotting Print Entire Desument		A su
if you've ai	Keep on Same Page	ľ
Sincerely	Begin on New Page	
	Annly Annly & Chasel Chasel	
	rishit chhit a anoso chose	n,
? 1		1
Heln Preferen	ces Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer In	Out

To set print options for an embedded document:

- 1 Choose Print Setup from the embedded document's Document menu.
 - ▲ If the Layout sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow at the top of the option sheet and tap Layout from the list.
- 2 Choose the appropriate options from the Formatting category on the Layout sheet.
 - ▲ To print the entire document, choose **Print Entire Document**.
 - ▲ If an embedded document is near the end of a page and you want to prevent the contents from being split between two pages, choose Keep on Same Page.
 - ▲ To make sure that an embedded document always begins on a new page, choose **Begin on New Page**.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

If you don't see the menu line for the embedded document, draw an M on the title line. If neither the title nor menu line is visible, draw a check tap \checkmark anywhere in the document to display the Document option sheets, then choose **Show** from the **Borders & Controls** category of the Access sheet to make the title and menu lines visible.

WORKING WITH EMBEDDED DOCUMENTS

If the embedded document is closed, PenPoint prints the icon and title. To avoid printing them, close the document and move the icon to the cork margin while you print. You can find out how to use the cork margin in the next section of this chapter.

If the embedded document is open, the PenPoint operating system normally doesn't print the menu and title line, borders, and scroll margins. However, some applications may treat these elements differently. See the guide that comes with the application.

The container document's Print Setup option sheets set the orientation and paper size for the embedded document and suppresses other Print Setup options for the embedded document, such as margins, headers, and footers.

If you want to format the embedded document with its own margins and headers and footers, you can do so:

- Choose Print Setup from the embedded document's Document menu.
- Choose the appropriate options on the Header and Layout sheets.
- Choose Print Entire Document from the Formatting category on the Layout sheet, and tap Apply & Close.

PenPoint prints the embedded document starting on a new page using the settings you've selected and then returns to the options for the document that contains it.

To print the embedded document without printing the document that contains it, choose **Print** from the embedded document's Document menu.

Using the Cork Margin

The cork margin is an area at the bottom of the document where you can put hyperlink buttons, new or embedded documents, and accessories. You can easily use things you've placed there no matter where you are in the document.

The PenPoint operating system doesn't print what's on the cork margin, so you can move buttons and closed embedded documents there when you don't want to print the title or icon.

1	Inventor	r C	<3	1.5
Document Edit Insert (Case Form	at		
۲۵ عد	ISTOMER S	TATUS REP BER 30, 1	ORT 990	Contents
		PREV CUR	R %	P
CUST PRODUCT LI	NE YTD	YTD	CHANGE	Te m
WHOLE FOODS				Pro
10 Marinara	1,240	1,800	30% +	du
20 Garlic Bomb	670	640	7% -	, j
25 SW Curry	8,009	5,340	40% +	Pn
30 Loco Coconut	400	590	20% +	po
40 Fish's Friend	130	106	25% -	Se
50 Outstanding	44	78	90% +	Z
60 Mellow Yellow	120	120	0% -	ew
TOTAL	12,008	12,987	8% +	Products
UNCLE BOB'S GROCER	Y	and the part of the second		0
20 Garlic Bomb	130	108	25% -	9 10
40 Fish's Friend	44	79	95% +	N I
50 Outstanding	118	118	0%	8
TOTAL	2,400	2,600	8% +	sto mers
RED LABEL STORES				Z
25 SW Curry	105	100	5% +	W.
30 Loco Coconut	40	75	95% +	Bot
				t ie
TOTAL	150	175	20% +	8
DODOGODOLO				n B
10 Maripara	1 240	1 800	30% +	0
20 Garlia Bomb	670	640	7% -	Z
25 GHI CHERRY	8,009	5 340	40% +	7
30 Loco Coponut	400	590	20% +	L G
	access) [b		EU	1.3
(REAL FOODS) (SUPERGR	UCERY D	To Do 7:38	P.M.	
(WHOLE FOODS) (UNCLE B	OBS) (RED	LABEL) (PRES	COTTS)	
	Table -	(-)	<u></u>	
? ✔ ID Help Preferences Tools	Stationery D	isks Keyboard	installer in	Out

The cork margin is always part of a document, but it's usually hidden.

To display it, draw a **C** in the document's title line.

Draw a **C** again to hide it and everything on it.

You can also show the cork margin by drawing a check \checkmark on the document title line to display the Document option sheets and then selecting **Cork Margin** on the Access sheet.

USING THE CORK MARGIN

Use the cork margin when you want to annotate a document by inserting notes and instructions there. To create a new document, draw a caret \wedge in the cork margin to display the Create menu and then tap to select a new piece of stationery.

You might also move an existing document, such as a to do list, to the cork margin so you can update it while working on the current document. To put a document in the cork margin, copy or move it from the Table of Contents.

Place hyperlink buttons in the cork margin to turn quickly to parts of the document you want to see without having to scroll through the document to find them. To insert a hyperlink button in the same document, select a word and draw the gesture for a hyperlink button \mathfrak{G} in the cork margin. To insert a hyperlink button for a different document, select the document in the Table of Contents and then draw the hyperlink button gesture \mathfrak{G} in the cork margin of the first document.

You can change the location of a hyperlink button in the same document by selecting a new word and triple tapping $rac{1}{2}$ the button. PenPoint changes the label on the button to reflect the new location.

To have easy access to an accessory, such as the calculator, copy the icon for it to the cork margin.

Customizing a Document

You can change the look and behavior of a document to suit what you're using it for. For example, if you embed a drawing in a report, you might choose not to display its menu line. If you're referring frequently to a document during a meeting, you might want to shorten the time it takes to turn to it.

You can decide whether to:

- Show the title line, menu line, scroll margin, or borders
- Shorten the time it takes to turn to a document
- Add a cork margin where you can store hyperlink buttons and embedded documents.



To customize a document:

- **1** Draw a check \checkmark on the document title.
 - You see the Document option sheets.
- 2 Tap on the arrow in the title line to see the list of sheets and tap on the option sheet you want to use.
 - Most of the customization options mentioned above are on the Access sheet.
- **3** Tap to select each option you want.
 - When you display the Document option sheets, you see a dimmed check mark next to each currently selected option. Tap an option to deselect it.
- 4 Tap Apply & Close to apply the options to the new document and close the option sheets.

Applications you install on the PenPoint computer may add their own options to the document option sheets or remove inappropriate ones.

You can also display the document option sheets by choosing **About** from the Document menu.

CHAPTER 6



Learning to Write on the Computer Screen

If you've never written with a pen on a computer screen before, you might want to spend a few minutes using the Letter Practice tool to get the feel of writing on glass.

Letter Practice Use this practice area to get used to writing on the screen with the GO pen before you use Handwriting Customization. Print one letter per box, staying inside the boxes. Lift the pen away from the screen after writing each letter to see the transle Start by writing individual letters, not words. Try making each letter several different ways; you may find that minor adjustments produce better translation results. Then try writing some short words so that you practice combinations of letters. NOTE: Do not use this screen, which flashes as it translates each character in isolation, to evaluate the accuracy of the system's handwriting translation. When you write in a document the translation will be more accurate because the system can use the dictionary and other context information abcdefghi j k 6 ormal 5 P e e Clear (Quit) Tools П A ersonal Dictionary Handwriting Customization Gloc Disk Manager Letter Practic B . બુ D .₽ ? 4 1 H Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer In Out Preferences

To use Letter Practice:

 Tap → the Tools icon on the Bookshelf to open it, and then tap → Letter Practice.

You'll see instructions for using Letter Practice.

Before starting to write, find a comfortable position.

2 Print one character per box.

Hold the pen as you would normally and write naturally. Don't press too hard with the pen.

As you print your letters, the PenPoint[™] operating system translates the results. Experiment with different ways of making the same letter to see what works best.

- ▲ Tap Clear to erase what you've written.
- ▲ Tap Quit to close Letter Practice and end the practice session.

If you normally print in upper case, practice writing that way. Later you can set a preference which translates your upper case writing into appropriate upper and lower case letters. (See the next section, "Printing in Upper Case.")

You can also set the size of the boxes so that you can write easily within them. To learn how to change the size, read "Choosing a Writing Pad Style" later in this chapter.

When you're comfortable writing on the screen, you can customize your printing with the Handwriting Customization tool. (See "Customizing Your Handwriting" in this chapter.) You'll find tips on how to write in pads in the next section, "Printing in Writing Pads."

Printing in Writing Pads

You print in the Notebook on a writing pad as you would on a paper pad. When you're done, the PenPoint operating system converts what you've written into typed, electronic text which you can then easily correct and edit.

Some applications, such as MiniText, have writing pads on them when you first turn to a newly created documents. The Notebook has other pads which you can also use to insert text. The section on "Getting a Writing Pad" in this chapter explains how to get and use each pad.

The standard writing pad contains separate boxes for each character. After translation the characters remain in their boxes so you can correct them before you transfer the text to the page.

At some point you may find it easier to write on ruled pads or to use a keyboard to enter text. To learn how to adjust the size and style of boxed and ruled pads, read "Choosing a Writing Pad Style"; to find out how to use the software keyboard read "Using a Keyboard to Write," both in this chapter.

Newly created MiniText documents contain a writing pad. (Read chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents to find out how to create a document.) Before practicing the following tips, turn to a MiniText document.



To print in a writing pad:

Start the letter in the character box and print clearly.

Write naturally; PenPoint will keep up with you.

You can leave extra spaces at the end of the line. (The PenPoint operating system converts them to a single space.)

Leave a space between words. If you finish a word in the last character box, skip a box on the next line before starting the next word.

To start a new paragraph, leave a space between lines.

If you get to the end of a line in the middle of a word, continue it on the next line. Don't hyphenate it or the PenPoint operating system will translate the hyphen.

Find a comfortable position, relax and write the way you normally do. (Don't press too hard with the pen.)

Some Tips on Writing in Pads

What Works

What Doesn't Work

Write neatly and at a normal speed, making your letters a consistent size. Sometimes when you're writing you'll make the first letter of a word larger than the others. PenPoint translates this as a capital letter.

	しんれい がてく アリート ション・トート エート・トレート たかくれんぷ
	the second s
The second s	

Make your letters the same way each time. For example, don't use one stroke sometimes for an r and two strokes at other times.

the second se	the second se
enciu coro	

When tall and short letters come next to each other, make sure there's a visible difference in their heights. For many letters, height is the only difference between upper and lower case.

Philadelphia	Philadelphia

Letters with curves in them should curve at the top if it's a capital letter or midway for a lower case letter.





Make sure that letters with descenders (g, j, p, q, and y) extend clearly below the baseline of the box or ruled line. They can even go outside the pad. When you print a descending letter, its tail may dip into the box or space below it. You can still write in this area when you get to it.

9 roup MY

a control of the state of the second s	and the second se	
i n i		: ក :
	$\sim \circ \circ$	1 8
	9	9 10 0 1

You can cross your *t*'s and dot your *i*'s after writing a line and before starting a new one.



1	1	1, 1				
15	13	h	1 6	$\sim c$		
~~~	- w	، مره	1 . ~	- : 🗠		
1			-	1		
0	- 0					
	. T	Lun in			i	Line i

What Works

What Doesn't Work

Writing in boxed pads:

Always start your letters within the box where you want that letter to go in. Any time you put the tip of the pen down on the writing or edit pad, you're starting a letter.

Writing in ruled pads:

Write as neatly as you do in the character boxes.

clearly

clearly

Don't let letters touch each other.

Washington

vashington

Leave a small, consistent amount of space between letters and more space between words.

```
Washington was the
```

Washing ton wasthe

If you run out of room when you're in the middle of a word, scratch it out = and begin the word again on the next line. (Don't hyphenate it or the PenPoint operating system will translate the hyphen.)

e			· · · ·	
VI	Sit	· +c	5 f	
5	1 . 1	1.5	m In	
٢.	h(lq	de l	pres	ର
			1	



Write vertically rather than on a slant. PenPoint sometimes translates overlapping letters as one letter.





Connect the strokes that you make to form a letter such as a t or k. Otherwise, the PenPoint operating system may translate each stroke as a separate character.





## Printing in Upper Case

If you normally print in upper case, you can do so and the PenPoint operating system will translate your writing into upper and lower case letters. To set this option:



- Tap → the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open Preferences.
  - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title of the option sheet and tap Handwriting.
- 2 Choose Upper Case Only from the Writing Style category pop-up list.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

# Translating Your Handwriting

You can translate your printing in a boxed or ruled-boxed writing pad at any time. This allows you to see if the translation is correct before you transfer the words to the page.



Tap **OK** when you're ready to translate your writing in the writing pad.

If PenPoint mistranslated any letters, you can correct them in the writing pad. (See "Correcting the Translation" later in this chapter.)

When you're ready to transfer the letters to the page, tap **OK** again.

Tap **Cancel** to close the pad without translating your writing.

The single character pad translates your handwriting automatically when you lift the pen away from the screen.

TRANSLATING YOUR HANDWRITING

To get the best translation results:

- Review the handwriting tips in this chapter.
- Train PenPoint some more with Handwriting Customization, which you'll find in Tools.
- Align the pen with the Pen sheet of the Preferences notebook.

1 New Products 3. New World will pay each invoice from an approved estimate w Preferences 🕨 Pen 4. You an F notand Sales Tap to Align Pen: will not be This is a On Pen Cursor. contract fo Customers √ Off 5. If your istand the 🖌 Pen **Primary Input:** 2 aranteed stresses, h Keyboard New Bottle Design it, you wil New World age esting ll thus before usi not hold y we have approved Apply Apply & Close Close 3 Please sign a copy of this agreement and fax it back to me. ./ ?| <u>الله</u> 睑 D 7 0 Stationery In Help Installer references Tools Disks Keyboa.id

To align the pen:

- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf.
  - If the Pen sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see a list of sheets and tap Pen.
- 2 Touch the pen to the middle of the cross-hairs of the Tap to Align Pen category.
- 3 Tap Apply & Close.

If you continue writing in the pad after translating your writing, the PenPoint operating system translates the text as you write. If the letters seem to disappear after you write them, the time interval is not long enough for you to complete a word before PenPoint translates it. You can increase the interval by changing the handwriting **timeout** option.

- Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf.
- If the Timeouts sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see a list of sheets and tap Timeouts.
- Write in an amount for the Handwriting Timeout. Or change the number by writing a new number over it.
- Tap Apply & Close.

# Correcting the Translation

f PenPoint mistranslates a word, you can correct it in the writing pad before you transfer what you've written to the page. Or, you can wait and correct it later on the page with the proof sheet or with editing gestures.

Correcting the Translation in the Writing Pad

If PenPoint doesn't recognize a letter, it replaces the letter with a symbol: @.

To correct unrecognized or mistranslated letters:

Write over a mistranslated letter.

Or, use gestures to correct it.

**MiniText** ▲ When you draw a gesture, begin 7 it within the character box and end it outside the box. Otherwise, Ok Clear Cancel PenPoint will try to interpret your gesture as a letter. comp a Insert a space with the insert space c 1 1-i 2 gesture 1 . The number of empty S a n d p boxes you add depends on the f R/ length of the bottom of the gesture. e C 0 d t h d Draw a vertical pigtail 9 to delete a nte unwanted characters. m i n a c Q n g n s Starti 🗢 n m Draw a horizontal line through the Point characters you want to delete. Зап

You can choose a different symbol—an underscore—for the unrecognized character:

- Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf. If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see a list of option sheets and tap Handwriting.
- Choose the underscore symbol from the Unrecognized Character pop-up list.
- Tap Apply & Close.



## Correcting the Translation with the Proof Sheet

If a word on the page is incorrect, you can often find the correct one on the Proof sheet.

_etter < 5>
$\mathbf{t}^{*,*,*}$ . The second s
tand the impact from a d. But four bottles of ⊐ntents all over the
try our product.
lable, 8 oz. plastic ute impact? I'll be k me suggested

- **1** Draw a **P** over the incorrect word to display the proof sheet.
- **2** Tap to select the correct word from the list of suggested alternatives.

If one of the alternatives is close to the word you want, double tap **:**/ the word to put it in the edit pad and display a list of further alternatives.

The list of alternatives may include combinations of letters the PenPoint operating system doesn't recognize as a word, since the word you wrote may be an acronym or personal noun not found in its dictionary. Choosing it from the Proof sheet adds it to the personal dictionary so that the next time you write the word, PenPoint will translate it correctly.

Instead of selecting a word from the list of suggested alternatives, you can also edit the word in the edit pad. To do so:

- Write over a mistranslated letter
- Or, use the same gestures you use to correct the text in the writing pad. (Insert a space with the insert space gesture ___; delete a single character with the vertical pigtail ?; delete several characters by drawing a horizontal line through them.)
- Tap the OK button to replace the incorrect word with the corrected one.

It's sometimes easier to correct the translation directly on the page, particularly when only one or two characters are mistranslated. You can read about editing gestures that let you correct and revise the text in chapter 7, Editing and Formatting Text.

# Getting a Writing Pad

There are two kinds of writing pads, pop-up and embedded. Use a pop-up pad to add a single character or several words to a document. The pop-up pad floats on the page. Before doing something else in the document, you need to translate your writing or close the pad.

Use an embedded pad to add several sentences. The embedded pad begins where you draw the gesture and the text that's already in the document flows around it. Unlike the pop-up pads, the embedded pads stay open so you can move around the document and still continue using the pad.

Docume nt	Edit Inse	ert Case	Format			
						4
					r	<b>4</b>
outhwes	tern cur	ry sauce	e			
This is ess	entially a	a barbeca	ie sauce	e. You'd :	spead this	3
	e over w	eretables	as wou	grill they	m Í	

To get a single character pad, draw the insert character gesture  $\square$ .

- As soon as you finish writing the character, PenPoint transfers the text to the page and dismisses the pad.
- ▲ If you decide not to write in the pad, dismiss it by tapping anywhere outside it.



- ▲ To make the pad bigger, press the pen on the corner handle to see an outline around it which tells you it's ready to be resized.
- ▲ Drag the corner handle to the right to widen the pad, down to lengthen it, and diagonally to increase it in both directions. Do the opposite to decrease the writing area.

<b>Eggplant dip</b> (We'll need a c	for vege	- iation on
babaganoush I shelf storage	Ok Clear Cancel	tern
shelf storage.	and and and an and	
		+
Southwestern	curry sauce	Y
This is essential	ly a barbecue sauce You'd sp	read this
I HID ID ODDOHIGOI	i) a correction particular ph	Lood dito

GETTING A WRITING PAD



▲ Tap **Cancel** to dismiss it without translating what you've written.

Most of the time when you work with pop-up and embedded pads, you tap buttons to translate your writing, and resize the pad when you need more room to write. Pads designed for a specific task may vary somewhat. For example, the single character pad doesn't have translation buttons or a resize handle.

If you are working in a MiniText document, you can get a writing pad by selecting the appropriate pad from the Insert menu.

## Choosing a Writing Pad Style

In the standard writing pad, you write in boxes. But after writing in the Notebook with the boxed pads, you may find it easier to use a ruled or ruled-boxed pad. In boxed pads, you write in boxes and then translate the text in the boxes. This allows you to see the results of your translation and edit any mistranslated characters before transferring it to the page. In ruled pads, you write on ruled lines and the PenPoint operating system translates your writing directly to the page.

Ruled-boxed pads combine both styles. You write on ruled lines, and then PenPoint translates your writing into boxes so you can edit the text before transferring it to the page.

When you choose a writing pad style you can also adjust its shape, size, and spacing to accommodate your handwriting by selecting the appropriate options on the Preferences Handwriting sheet.

Choosing Boxed Pads

In boxed pads you write a single character in each box, translate your writing in the boxes, and then transfer the text to the page.

To find out how to translate your writing and correct the translation, read "Translating Your Handwriting" and "Correcting the Translation," both in this chapter.



To choose a boxed pad:

- **1** Tap **)** Preferences to open it.
  - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Handwriting from the list.
- 2 Choose Boxed from the Writing Pad pop-up list.

#### **3** Tap Apply & Close.

▲ The next time you insert a pad or turn to one on a newly created document, you'll get a boxed pad.

### Choosing a Ruled Pad

Once you get used to writing in the Notebook, you may find it more convenient to write on a ruled pop-up or embedded pad.

Ruled pads differ from boxed pads:

- The PenPoint operating system doesn't translate the writing in the pad before transferring it to the page.
- You can't use the keyboard to enter text. (If you'd rather enter text with the keyboard, you can do so directly in the document.)



Recently of our sa our line. his son r	, an executive of a supermarket chain took a box mples home in order to try them before ordering He briefly left the box on the kitchen floor where an into it with a tricycle.
	i A
	K Clear Cancel
Οu	r bottles
sh	ould be able to
wit	hstand the
im	pact from a
tri	cycle
The exec	cutive never got a chance to try our product.

To choose a ruled pad:

- 1 Tap the y Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open it.
  - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Handwriting from the list.
- **2** Tap **Ruled** from the **Writing Pad** pop-up list.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.
  - ▲ The next time you insert a pad or turn to one on a newly created document, you'll get a ruled pad.

To write in a ruled pad:

Samples

- 4 Draw a caret tap  $\dot{\wedge}$  to display an embedded pad.
- **5** Write naturally. Leave space between words.
  - ▲ Draw a scratch out <del>→</del> to erase what you've written; tap **Clear** to erase the pad.
- **6** Tap the OK button to transfer your writing to the page.
  - ▲ Tap **Cancel** to dismiss the pad without translating your writing.

#### CHOOSING A WRITING PAD STYLE

If in translating your writing to the page, PenPoint doesn't recognize a letter, it replaces it with a symbol **@**. You can correct mistranslated words with editing gestures or the Proof sheet. You'll find an explanation of correcting words in the Proof sheet in this chapter and of editing text in chapter 7, Editing and Formatting Text.

For tips on how to get the best translation results when writing on the ruled pads, read "Printing in Writing Pads" in this chapter.

You can change the writing pad style but not the edit pad style. The text in edit pads always appears in boxes.

### Choosing a Ruled-Boxed Pad

If you like writing on a ruled pad but prefer to translate and edit the text before transferring it to the page, choose a ruled-boxed pad style.

Dear Ms. Huerta:	Preferences	<ul> <li>Handwriting</li> </ul>	
We need a new de	Writing Style:	Mixed Case	
condiments.	Writing Pad:	• Boxed	
Recently, an exec	Box Size:	Ruled/Boxed Ruled	рх
ot our samples ho our line. He briefl	Box Shape:	▶ Medium	g ere
his son ran into it	Ruled Height:	▶ Medium	
The executive nev	Unrecognized Character:		
Can you design a bottle that won't b	Apply App	ly & Olose Close	
travelling next wee proposals at 415/ 3	k, but you can 45-9833.	tax me suggested	
			Ŷ

our line. He ils son ran ir	riefly left the box on the kitchen floor to it with a tricycle.	where
	●k Clear Cancel	
Our	bottles	
shou	Id be able t	0
with	stand the	
impa	ict from a	a a
tric	ycle powered	
bv a	three vear	
old.		
0.01.	and the second	Station of the second second

To choose a ruled-boxed pad:

- 1 Tap the > Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open it.
  - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Handwriting from the list.
- 2 Tap Ruled-Boxed on the Writing Pad pop-up list.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.
  - ▲ The next time you insert a pad or turn to one on a newly created document, you'll get a ruled-boxed pad.

To write in a ruled-boxed pad:

- **4** Draw a caret tap  $\dot{\wedge}$  to display an embedded pad.
- **5** Write naturally. Leave space between words.
  - ▲ Draw a scratch out <del>→</del> to erase what you've written; tap **Clear** to erase the pad.
- **6** Tap OK to translate your writing into boxes.

#### USING PENPOINT

#### CHOOSING A WRITING PAD STYLE



7 Edit any mistranslated characters, as described in "Correcting the Translation" in this chapter.

Tap OK to transfer the text to the document.

▲ Tap **Cancel** to dismiss the pad without translating your writing.

### Choosing a Writing Pad Size and Shape

Your Notebook comes with certain options preset, such as the size and shape of writing pads.

Dear Ms. H	Preferences	▶ Handwriting	
We need a	Writing Style:	Mixed Case	ur
condiments	Writing Pad:	Boxed	
Recently, a	Box Size:	Medium	ok a box
of our same	Box Shape:	▶ Medium	rdering
our line. He his son ran	Ruled Height:	Medium	or where
Our bottles tricycle pov	Unrecognized Character.	A Closel Closel	t from a tles of
floor.	1.061601 0.0616		a ule
The executiv	e never gota d	chance to try our pro	duct.
Can you des	ign a lightweig	tht, recyclable, 8 oz.	plastic
Can you des bottle that we	ign a ngntweig on't break unde	er moderate impact?	plastic I'll be

To adjust the writing pad size and shape:

- Tap the > Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open it.
  - ▲ If the Handwriting sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Handwriting from the list.
- 2 If you've chosen Boxed or Ruled-Box writing pad style, choose the appropriate Box Size and Box Shape from the pop-up lists.
- 3 If you've chosen Ruled writing pad style, choose a height from the Ruled Height pop-up list.
- **4** Tap Apply & Close.

The PenPoint operating system applies the settings to newly created pop-up or embedded writing pads (not to the one you're presently using).

# Using a Keyboard to Write

At times you may find it easier to insert text by typing it. You can use the PenPoint operating system's **software keyboard** or a regular PS/2 keyboard that you plug into the GO Quick Charger to add text directly to a document or to correct translated text in a writing pad.

When you use the keyboard to insert text in a writing pad, field, or on the page, you first tell PenPoint where to begin typing by setting the insertion point. If instead of adding text you want to replace text, select the text you want to replace and then begin typing.

### Typing Text Directly onto the Page



To type text directly onto the page:

- 1 Tap the software keyboard icon on the Bookshelf. (If the keyboard icon is not visible, tap Tools and tap the keyboard icon).
- 2 Press > to set an insertion point in the text. (Tap to locate the insertion point if you've set the Primary Input to keyboard on the Pen Preferences sheet.)
- **3** Tap a character on the keyboard.

PenPoint inserts it in the text.

- ▲ To replace a character, tap it to select it and then tap the appropriate key.
- ▲ To delete a character, tap the backspace key.
- ▲ To move the keyboard, press and drag the title line.
- **4** Tap the close corner to close the keyboard.

134

## Correcting Text in the Writing Pad by Typing

You can correct text in a boxed or ruled-boxed writing pad by typing with the keyboard.



- Tap the keyboard icon on the Bookshelf. (If the keyboard icon is not visible, tap Tools and tap the keyboard icon).
- 2 Press > to make a box active. (Tap to make it current if you've set the Primary Input to keyboard on the Pen Preferences sheet.)

Tap the appropriate key on the keyboard.

PenPoint inserts it in the box.

If you continue typing PenPoint replaces the characters in the subsequent boxes with what you type.

▲ To delete a character, tap the backspace key.

Depending on your writing task, you may want to choose a different keyboard layout. Draw a check  $\checkmark$  on the title of the current keyboard and tap to select an alphabetical or PC compatible layout or a numeric keypad.

To use a regular PS/2 keyboard, plug it into the GO Quick Charger and follow the same procedure as you do for the software keyboard. You'll find a diagram of how to attach the keyboard in chapter 13, Setting Up Your Computer.

The PenPoint operating system doesn't use the function, {Alt}, and {Ctrl} keys on the keyboard.
# Customizing Your Handwriting

The Handwriting Customization tool contains sample sentences which you copy to show PenPoint how you write.

If you've never written with a pen on a computer screen before, you might want to spend a few minutes using the Letter Practice tool to get the feel of writing on glass.

Once you're accustomed to writing on the screen, you'll be able to train PenPoint in the writing style you'll actually use in the Notebook.



To use Letter Practice:

- **1** Tap the Tools icon to open it.
- **2** Open Handwriting Customization by tapping its icon.

- **3** Enter a name for your handwriting profile by tapping each letter of your name on the keyboard. (To delete a previous letter, tap the backspace key.)
- **4** Tap Begin to start.
- 5 Tap a button to choose a customization set. PenPoint suggests which set you do Next, but you may choose any set.

If you decide not to customize PenPoint at this time, tap Exit Handwriting Customization to close it.

You'll probably find it easiest to use the keyboard to enter your profile name, but you can also write it in the field. If you make a mistake, cross it out or use the backspace key on the keyboard to delete the text. You can also put the text in an edit pad by tapping the name field. (See "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text) for information on editing text.)

#### Using a Customization Set

A set consists of a series of sentences or letters, numbers, and symbols which you copy.



**1** Copy each letter in the box below it.

If you make a mistake, tap **Clear** to erase the last word you wrote. (If you tap it again it erases the previous word and so on.)

**2** Tap Accept when you've completed the sentence.

If you normally write in uppercase letters, choose **Upper Case Only** from the Handwriting sheet in Preferences when you're finished with Customization. On this sheet you can also adjust the character box shape and width to suit your natural writing style.

You may find that the size of the box isn't the right size for your writing style. To learn how to set the size of the boxes so that you can write easily within them, read "Choosing a Writing Pad Style" in this chapter.

If you choose a larger box size, you may need to scroll the page to bring the areas off the screen into view. Flick up l on the page to bring the bottom of the page into view; flick down l to bring the top of the page into view. To find out more details about scrolling, read "Scrolling Documents" in chapter 5 (Creating and Using Documents).



If at any time you find that PenPoint mistranslates a few specific characters, you can brush up on those characters with the **Individual Character** customization.

If you want to quit Customization in the middle, tap **Exit**, then tap **Exit Handwriting Customization** to return to the Notebook Table of Contents. To resume Customization, tap Tools to open it, and then tap the Handwriting Customization icon.

### Analyzing Your Progress

When you complete a set of sentences or letters, PenPoint displays a status report. Below each category you'll find recommendations about whether or not it would be useful for you to continue to work on sentences or individual characters.

ver Up se Ca 0 75% 0 85% 0 0 0 0	per N se S 0 0 0 0 0 0	ums & ymbols
4 0 75% 0 85% 0 0 0 0	4 0 0 0 0 0	
0 75% 0 85% 0 0 0 0	0	
75% 0 85% 0 0 0 0	0 0 0	
75% 0 85% 0 0 0 0	0	
85% 0 0 0 0	0 0 0	
0 0 0	0 0	
0 0 0 0	0 0 0	
0 0 0	0	
0	0	
0 0	0	
0	0	
	U	
nqs		
ther Fu ning tra be wil pful. he	rther Fi ining tra Ibe w Ipful. he	urther aining ill be elpful.
ise Set		dona e
ise Set	mpois S	ser
ise Set ise Set and Sy	ters	
ise Set ise Set and Sy Charac		on
E.D.	ase Set s and Sy Il Charac	ase Set s and Symbols S Il Characters writing Customizati



If you end the customization session before completing it, PenPoint remembers the statistics from your previous session when you resume it.

You can end a customization set at any time by tapping the **Exit** button. If you exit before finishing the set, you'll start with the first sentence of the set when you resume. (The PenPoint operating system displays new text for you to copy when you begin the set again.)

#### Accommodating Multiple Users

If you're sharing your Notebook with others, each of you can create your own handwriting profile.

The first person who uses the Notebook creates a profile by renaming the standard one in Handwriting Customization. After that, you'll find a copy of the standard profile—which you can customize and rename—in the Installer. When you switch users you activate your individual profile from the Installer.

You'll find a further explanation on how to create, backup, and rename profiles in chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices.

•_

# Editing and Formatting Text

# Selecting Text

single word you draw a cross out  $\chi$  over it. At other times, you need to tell the  $PenPoint^{TM}$  operating system what to act upon by first selecting it. For example, to delete several lines of text, you first need to select them.

Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Tap to select a single character.
Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Double tap to select a word.
Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. By four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Triple tap to select a sentence.
Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Quadruple tap to select a paragraph.

Sometimes the object of your commands is obvious. For example, to delete a

To select the entire document, choose Select All from the Edit menu.

#### EDITING AND FORMATTING TEXT

#### SELECTING TEXT

You can specify how much text is selected with two other gestures: brackets [], and press p and drag.

Our bottles should tricycle powered b our new salsa brok floor.	be able to withstand the impact from a by a three year old. Bat four bottles of se, spilling their contents all over the Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Press > on a character until you see the insertion point—you'll see a vertical line where you pressed— and then drag to select the text. You end the selection by lifting the pen.
Our bottles should tricycle powered b our new salsa broł floor.	be able to withstand the impact from a by a three year old. But four bottles of se, spilling their contents all over the Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Or, draw a left bracket [ and then a right bracket ] to select enclosed text. (Drawing a bracket anywhere on the word selects the whole word.)
Our bottles should tricycle powered b our new salsa brol floor.	be able to withstand the impact from a by a three year old. But four bottles of spilling their contents all over the Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact from a tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles of our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over the floor.	Redraw either bracket to adjust the selection.

Selecting the text by pressing and dragging works best when you want to define a selection that begins or ends with an individual character. The brackets are more efficient when you're working with whole words. They also let you scroll to another part of the document before completing the selection.

When you redraw a bracket to shorten the selection, you can redraw it on a character. This is useful, for example, when you want to select text without the comma, period, or other punctuation that follows it.

To deselect a selection, tap it.

# Editing Text

Once the PenPoint operating system has translated your handwriting into text, you can change the text directly on the page, or correct or replace the text in an edit pad. Make corrections in the edit pad when only a few characters need to be corrected. Use the replace gesture  $\Leftrightarrow$  when it's easier to rewrite the text than edit it or when you want to replace it with new text.

Styling and formatting text are covered later in this chapter.

#### EDITING TEXT

### Adding Text

To add text to a document, you use the writing pad that best accommodates the amount of text you want to add.

		SMNE	WPRD	· · · ·		, . <7>.
Docume nt	Edit Insert	Case	Format			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
2th					r	Ŷ
This is ess	entially a b	arbecu	e sauce.	You'd s	pead this	5
urry saud	e over veg	etables	as you g	rill them		
	an crystational at the Print	e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e		eacosta a		
Eggplant	dip					
We'll nee	d a catchy	nar 🖌	or	V		0
abagano helf stora	ae ae	1t W 🛄		<b>.</b>	U Y	-
nen store	80.		QK	Clear	Cancel	
Southwes	stern curry	sauce			and a second second	
his is ess	sentially a b	arbecu	e sauce	You'd s	pread th	is
urry sauc	e over veg	etables	as you g	nii mem		
Dick I v	vas fiddling	aroun	d with so	me old i	recipes a	ınd
ame up v	with some w	rays we	e might n	narket eg	ggplant	
vhich is a	good stabl	e vegel				
	ē	Clea	ar Canc	əl		
		1. 1				
1 1	5	s h	eal	2 1	0	
ar	0 W	a n	4 .	5 IJ P	vi	
<b>9</b> · ·					h-ph	- 1
Ve	6 W	e		i n	CC	
14	e t	or	20	9		
N N	0.0		ayı	2 <b>9</b> 1 5 1		1
d	var	10	U S	p r	ep	
			. E		Transfer and	
Jeume Kr	iow what yo	oa anni	n Enti	que		States and

To add one character, draw an insert character gesture  $\square$  and write in the pad that appears.

PenPoint translates your writing when you lift the pen away from the screen.

To insert one or more words, use a pop-up pad. To get one, draw a caret  $\wedge$ .

Tap **OK** to translate your writing in the pad; tap **OK** again to transfer it to the page.

To add several lines of text, use an embedded pad. To get one, draw a caret tap  $\dot{\wedge}$ .

Tap **OK** to translate your writing in the pad; tap **OK** again to transfer it to the page.

▲ If you want to close it without translating what you've written, tap Cancel.

PenPoint inserts the text where you drew the gesture to get the pad.

You can find out more about how to use writing pads in chapter 6, Writing in the Notebook.

#### EDITING TEXT

Deleting Text

The delete gestures operate directly on a character, word, or a selection.

Can you design a flightweight, recyclable, 8 oz. plastic bottle that won't break under moderate impact? I'll be travelling next week, but you can fax me suggested proposals at 415/345-9833.

Draw a vertical pigtail  $\mathcal{I}$  to delete a single character.

Draw a cross out  $\chi$  to delete the word or selection beneath the gesture.



This is our agreement concerning your involvement a new bottle design for New World Foods, Inc.

To add a single space, draw an insert space gesture 1 .

Repeat this gesture to add more spaces.

#### EDITING TEXT

### Editing Text in Edit Pads

If the text you want to change contains several mistranslated letters, you might find it easier to change the text in an edit pad.

1 To edit a word, draw a circle o <4> New Product Ideas Document Edit Insert Case Format over it. Dick -**c** h e a p To edit more than a single word, I was fiddling arour r's old select the text and then draw the recipes the other da OK Clear Cancel ral ways we circle o over the selection. An might try to market stable vegetable. It's quite seep to grow and it survives well in edit pad opens with your colldstoraaage, and various preparations of it seem to selection in it. hold up well on the snelt. I think these new products might be especially popular in the Southwest and in California where they're rediscovering vegetables. Let me 2 You can edit the word or words in know what you think. -- Enrique several different ways: ▲ Write the correct letters over the incorrect ones. Dick --I was fiddling arouf recipes the other da helf vays we 6 ▲ Clear the pad by tapping **Clear** might try to market le vegetable. It's quite Cance and then write in new text. OK. well in colldstoraaage, and n to hold up well on the sreft. I think these new products might be especially popular in the Southwest and in California where they're rediscovering vegetables. Let me ▲ Edit the text with: know what you think. -- Enrique a vertical pigtail 7 to delete a single character. a horizontal line — to delete a series of letters. d 0 an insert space gesture 1 to OK. Cancel m Clear insert one or more spaces colldCorazage, and various preparations of it seem to hold up well on the shelf I think these new products (the length of the horizontal stroke at the bottom determines might be especially popular in the Southwest and in California where they're rediscovering vegetables. Let me the number of spaces). know what you think. -- Enrique 3 Tap **OK** to replace the text. ▲ To dismiss the edit pad without translating your printing, tap

If you need more room to write, resize the edit pad by dragging its corner handle. (Resizing pads is explained in chapter 2, Fundamentals.)

To replace a word: Draw the replace gesture  $\Leftrightarrow$  over the word to display an empty edit pad; write in the new word, tap **OK**, and if the word is correct, tap **OK** again. PenPoint replaces the original word with the new one.

Cancel.

### Editing Text in Labels and Document Titles

Edit labels and document titles the same way you do text in documents: draw a circle  $\circ$  over the text and change it in the edit pad.

Use the edit pad to edit:

- Tab, icon, and hyperlink labels
- Document and section titles in the Notebook Table of Contents
- Titles in the document title line.

#### Editing Text in Fields

You can also change text written in fields on forms, option sheets, and lists. To change text in fields, edit it in the edit pad or change it directly on the page.

To use the edit pad:

- Tap the text in the field or draw a circle o over it to put the text in an edit pad.
- Edit the text using the vertical pigtail 9, horizontal line —, and insert space gestures _.

	Standard Order Form	<4>
Sales Rep.:	Nerk Lee	
Customer: Name:	Continuing     New-World	
Address:	1921 Palm Blvd	
City:	Los Angeles	
State: 🕨 CA	Zip: 9 0 0 3 6	
Phone:	2 1 3 / 5 5 5 - 1 2	1 2
Quantity Or	ders	
3 9 MI	uscles Marinara	

You can edit the text in a **fill-in field** (a field that looks like a line) directly on the page.

To delete the contents of the field, cross it out  $\chi$  or scratch it out  $\ne$ .

To add text, draw a caret  $\wedge$ .

To edit the text directly, draw a vertical pigtail  $\mathcal{I}$  to delete a single character.

To add a space, draw an insert space gesture  $\lfloor$  . Repeat this gesture to add more spaces.

#### EDITING AND FORMATTING TEXT

EDITING TEXT



You can also change the text in a field with boxes (an **overwrite field**) directly on the page.

> To change text by overwriting, write the correct character over the incorrect one.

To delete a single character, draw a vertical pigtail  $\mathcal{I}$ .

 ▲ To delete several characters, draw a horizontal line or a scratch out
 ← through the characters you want to delete.

To add one or more spaces, draw an insert space gesture  $_$  (the length of the horizontal stroke at the bottom determines the number of spaces).

Sometimes it's more convenient to copy text from the document to a fill-in field. For example, you might copy text from a document to the Find field on the Find dialog sheet. To do this, select the text to copy, and then tap press. And drag the text to the field.

If you find it easier to use the software keyboard to add text:

- Tap the keyboard located on the Bookshelf or in Tools.
- Press > to tell the PenPoint operating system where to enter the text. (If you've set keyboard as the Primary Input on the Pen sheet in Preferences, then tap to set an insertion point).
- Type in the text.

# Moving and Copying Text

You can move or copy text within a document or to another document by using gestures or by choosing the appropriate command from the Edit menu. For example, you can rearrange the order of an itemized list by moving the paragraphs, or you can copy text you want to use again from one document to another one.

#### Moving Text



5. If your design proves to be inadequate to withstand the

To move text:

- 1 Select the text you want to move.
- 2 Press ▶ your pen on the selection and hold it there until you see a single marquee surrounding the text (or a portion of it, if the selection is longer than a few words).
- **3** Drag the text to a new location in the document.

To accurately position the text you're moving or copying, lift the pen where you want the text to go: between words, sentences, or paragraphs. To cancel a move or copy, tap anywhere on the page before dragging the text.

# Copying Text

You copy text almost the same way you move it. To copy text:

- Select the text.
- Tap the selection and then touch the pen to the screen again and hold it until you see the double marquee surrounding the text. This is the tap press → gesture.
- Drag the copied text to its new location.

If you find it easier to use the menu commands, select the text, choose **Copy** from the Edit menu, and then drag the marquee to its destination.

You can also move or copy text to a part of the document that's not currently displayed or to another page. To do so:

- Select the text.
- Press > on the text until you see the marquee if you're moving it; tap press > until you see the double marquee if you're copying it.
- Scroll to another location, or turn to another page (the text in the marquee floats above the new location).
- Drag the text to its destination.

# Styling Text

 $\mathbf{Y}$ ou can change the appearance of text by using gestures or the text option sheets to:

- change the text style to bold, italics, or underlined
- choose a different font (the typeface) or point size
- change cases, for example to turn upper case words into lower case.

### Styling Text Directly

You use gestures to style text directly on the page. If you select a range of text, the gesture applies to the selection; otherwise, it applies to the word that lies beneath the gesture.

To restore the text to its previous style, draw the same gesture again on the word or selection.

#### STYLING TEXT

To style text	Gesture	Result
<b>B</b> to bold the text	Southwestern c <b>ur</b> ry sauce	Southwestern <b>curry</b> sauce
<b>I</b> to italicize it	Southwestern cu <b></b> zy sauce	Southwestern <i>curry</i> sauce
U to underline the text	Southwestern cu <b>ld</b> ry sauce	Southwestern <u>curry</u> sauce
N restores the text to its normal settings by removing styles such as bold type, italics, and underlining.	Southwestern <b>cuty</b> sauce	Southwestern curry sauce
To increase the size of the characters by 2 points—the next available size on the font option menu—draw an arrow up $\uparrow$ .	Southwestern qurry sauce	Southwestern <b>curry</b> sauce
To decrease the size of the characters by 2 points, draw an arrow down ¹ .	Southwestern curry sauce	Southwestern curry sauce
To change the text to upper case, draw a $-1$ .	Southwestern c <del>urly</del> sauce	Southwestern CURRY sauce
To convert the text to lower case, draw a $\neg$ .	Southwestern CURRY sauce	Southwestern curry sauce
To change the text to initial capitals, draw a → .	Southwestern o <del>url</del> y sauce	Southwestem Curry sauce

In MiniText documents, you can also change the case by selecting the text and then choosing the appropriate case from the Case menu.

For more information about how to draw these gestures, see chapter 3, Drawing Gestures.

STYLING TEXT

#### Styling Text with Text Option Sheets

When you want to make several changes to a document or a range of text, you might find it more convenient to use the **Character option sheet**.



- Select the text to style and draw a check ✓ over the selection.
  - ▲ If the Character option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow in the title line of the option sheet to see the list of option sheets, and tap Character.
- **2** Tap  $\mathbf{y}$  to select an option.
  - ▲ Some options present several further choices. These appear on pop-up lists.
- 3 Tap y Apply & Close.

You can also display the text option sheets by selecting text and choosing **Options** from the Edit menu.

When you display the text option sheets, the check marks next to the options that apply to the current selection are dimmed. Check marks for your new choices are dark (if you deselect an option, the line next to the option turns dark). This enables you to easily see which new attributes you're applying to a selection that contains several different styles. When you tap **Apply**, PenPoint applies only the new choices.

## Formatting Text

You can change the placement of text on the page by setting paragraph options. For example, you can indent a paragraph or center a title.

### Setting Margins



- Select the text to format and draw a check ✓ over the selection.
  - ▲ If the Paragraph option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Paragraph.
- 2 Write in the number of inches for the **Right** and **Left Margin**. (This specifies how much the text will be indented from the document page margin, not from the edge of the page itself.)
  - Set the document page margins with the Print Setup command on the Document menu.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

You can also change the alignment of the margins and center text within the margins. For details, see "Positioning Text" later in this chapter.

# Changing Line Spacing

You change line spacing and paragraph spacing on the Paragraph option sheet.

Dooume	TextOptions 🕨 Paragraph	< 6>
Dear M	Alignment: $\checkmark   \equiv   \equiv   \equiv  $	Î
We nee condim	Line Height: 0 . 1 9 in.	
Recent	Between Lines: 0 0 0 in	a box
our line his son	1st Line Offset: 0 0 0 in	where
Our bot tricycle	Left Margin: 0 0 1 in.	om a i of
our nev floor.	Right Margin: 0 0 0 in.	he
The exe	Space Before: 0 0 0 in.	
bottle tl travellir	Space After.	e e
proposa	Apply Apply Close Close	

- Select the text to format and draw a check ✓ over the selection.
  - ▲ If the Paragraph option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Paragraph.
- **2** You can alter the line spacing in several ways:
  - ▲ Increase the Line Height when you have several fonts on a line and want more space around the letters.
  - ▲ Change the spacing **Between** Lines by writing an amount in inches.
  - Indent the first line of each paragraph by writing an amount in inches for the 1st Line Offset.
  - ▲ Change the spacing between paragraphs by adding **Space Before** the first line of the paragraph or **Space After** the last line.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

Use the line spacing offset to adjust the spacing around an embedded document so it isn't flush against the preceding text and, similarly, to add more space to a line if a font you've chosen looks crowded. To add space between the top of a document and the first paragraph, change the line spacing before the first line. FORMATTING TEXT

## Positioning Text

You change the placement of text on the page by selecting the appropriate **Alignment** option on the Paragraph option sheet.

Docume	Text Optic	ons 🕨 Paragraph	< 6>
Dear M	Alignment:	<pre></pre> <pre><th></th></pre>	
We nee condim	Line Height:	0, 19 in.	
Recentl	Between Lines:	0.00 in.	a box
our line his son	1st Line Offset:	0 0 0 in.	where
Our bot tricycle	Left Margin:	0.00 _{in.}	om a ; of
our nev loor.	Right Margin:	0.00 _{in.}	he
The ex Can yo	Space Before:	0.00 _{in.}	ic
bottle tl travellit	Space After:	<u>o . o o</u> _{in.}	e
proposa	Apply Ap	ply & lose Close	

- Select the text to format and draw a check ✓ over the selection.
  - ▲ If the Paragraph option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Paragraph.
- **2** Tap to choose an Alignment:
  - ▲ Align the text flush left.
  - ▲ Center the text.
  - ▲ Align the text flush right.
  - ▲ Align the text evenly on both margins.

**3** Tap Apply & Close.

FORMATTING TEXT

Setting Tab Stops

You specify the position of tabs on the Tab Stops option sheet and set tabs directly on the page.



In MiniText documents, you can also insert a tab on a page by setting an insertion point—press r to set it—and then choosing Tab from the Insert menu.

FORMATTING TEXT

#### Starting a New Line, Paragraph, or Page

By using a gesture or equivalent menu command you can start a new line, paragraph, or page. You might start a new line to add blank lines or to split an item on a list into two items. When you start a new paragraph, PenPoint applies the current paragraph formatting options to it, such as the amount to indent the first line.

Package Design Letter	< 6>
Document Edit Insert Case Format	nnete d'all
Ms. Elena Huerta FastPak Design]3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321	Ŷ
RE: New package design	
Dear Ms. Huerta:	
We need a new design for the plastic bottles for our condiments Recently, an executive of a supermarke chain took a box of our samples home in order to try them before ordering our line. He briefly left the box the kitchen floor where his son ran into it with a tric	et v on worker

To insert a paragraph break and make a new paragraph, draw an insert paragraph gesture_1.

To insert a line break and start a new line, draw an insert new line gesture _____.

In MiniText documents, you can also start a new line or paragraph by tapping to select a location and then choosing the appropriate command from the Insert menu.

To add a page break to a MiniText document:

- Press > to set the insertion point (or tap > if you've set keyboard as the Primary Input on the Pen Preference sheet).
- Choose Page Break from the Insert menu.

### Copying a Format or Style

Sometimes you may want to apply the same format or style to a different selection. For example, you might copy the format of a section title in the beginning of a report to a title that appears later in the report. To copy a format or style:

- Select the text which has the format or style you want to copy.
- Draw a check  $\checkmark$  to display its option sheet.
- Turn to the option sheet that has the formats you want to copy. For example, to apply the character styles you used in the heading, turn to the Character option sheet.
- Scroll to the part of the document, that contains the text you want to format.
- Select the text.
- Tap Apply.

You can copy formats and styles of objects as well as text. For example, in a drawing of a floor plan you might want to change the pen width and fill pattern you're using for windows to match the one you used on a previous drawing.

# Viewing Text

### Viewing Text

The View options change the page display. With these options you can increase or decrease the magnification and show hidden text or symbols that tell you how the text is formatted.

You display the View option sheet in the usual way: draw a check  $\checkmark$  on the text, tap the arrow at the top of the sheet to see the list, tap View, and then choose the appropriate options. When you apply the View options, they apply to the whole document rather than a selection.

en e	ONTRACT	<21>
Document Edit Insert C	ase Format	
¶ Dear Ms. Huerta:¶	TextOptions 🕨 View	Ń
¶ This is our agreement c new bottle design for N ¶ 1. You agree to supply	Magnify Text on Screen: Show Special Characters:	
irawings to New World become the property of your services.¶	Show Hidden Text: > Yes	
<ol> <li>Your cost estimates revery week and approve you continue work. Ma</li> <li>New World will pay</li> <li>New World will pay</li> </ol>	must be submitted in advance ed by Richard Hopkins before ke sure that Nancy sees these each invoice from an approve 0) days.¶	:¶ ed

Tap Yes from the Show Special Characters pop-up menu to show symbols on the screen, such as:

- ▲ line breaks
- paragraph marks.

Tap Yes from the Show Hidden Text pop-up menu to show text that you hid with the Hidden option on the Character option sheet.

To hide text, use the Character option sheet; to view or print it, use the View option sheet. For example, to add to a document notes or comments that you don't want to show or print, select the text and choose **Hidden** from the Character option sheet. To view or print that text, choose **Show Hidden Text** from the View option sheet.

VIEWING TEXT

## Magnifying the Text

You can increase the size of the text by magnifying it. When you magnify text, the letters become bigger without increasing their font size. That makes it easier to work with the document on screen without changing how it will look when it's printed.

To magnify text:

- Draw a  $\checkmark$  on a word to display the text option sheets
- Tap the option name to select the View sheet if it's not displayed
- Tap to see the different magnification amounts and tap to select a magnification size.

Before printing a document, you may want to see what it will look like when it's printed. To preview it:



Choose For Printer from the Format menu to see how the page will look when it's printed.

▲ If you've set margins that are wider than the PenPoint computer screen, draw a flick left to scroll to the part of the document that's off the screen.

Choose For Screen to see the page as it usually appears on the screen.

# Checking Your Spelling

You can check the spelling of anything you've written in the notebook. For example, in a document you can check the spelling of a single word, selected text, or the entire document.

When you check the spelling of a document or selection, the spell dialog shows each misspelled word in an edit pad. If you don't find the correct word among the alternatives, you can correct it in the edit pad using the editing gestures described in "Editing Text in Edit Pads" in this chapter. Or, you can write a new word over the old one.

New P	rod <b>e</b> ct Ideas	⟨4⟩
Document Edit Insert Case	e Format	
		ί.
Dick		
I was fiddling around with	some of my mother's old	
recipes the other day and l	came up with several ways w	e
might try to market eggpla	ent which is a good stable	Л
vegetable. It's cheap to gro	ow and it survives well in cldo	
storage, and various prepa	rations of it seem to hold up	
well on the shelf. I think	Spell	
especially popular in the		
where they re realscover	cited clot clock	
what you units Ening	cold coda colt	
	clad code cloddy	
Eggplant dip	clog cod coldly	
(We'll need a catchy nar		
babaganoush that I think		
shelf storage. It involves	Replace Ignore Cancel	
can do in bulk) and then	Contraction of the second second second second	
lemon, olive oil and spid		
problems with the oil sepa	rating out to the top of the jar,	
which is very unappetizing	g, but I'm sure we can find a	
binding agent to solve this		

- To check the spelling of an entire document, draw an S on the title line or choose Spell from the Edit menu.
  - ▲ To check a word or part of a document, select the text and draw an S over the selection.

PenPoint displays the Spell dialog and puts the first misspelled word it finds in the edit pad.

**2** Tap **y** on an alternate word.

PenPoint substitutes the correctly spelled word and continues checking the text.

Tap **Ignore** to skip a word without correcting it and continue checking.

**3** At any time you can tap **y** Cancel to close the spelling checker.

You can check the spelling of a document from any point forward by drawing an  $\mathfrak{S}$  there. (Before drawing the gesture, deselect any selected text by tapping it, or the PenPoint operating system will check the spelling of the selected text.)

Sometimes it's easier to edit the word in the edit pad than to find its alternative in the list. For example, you might be able to correct a word by deleting a single character. Then tap **)** Replace to transfer the edited word to the page and continue checking.

If the word you want isn't on the list, you might find it in a list of further alternatives. Double tap . any alternate word to display more alternatives. The alternate word you tapped goes into the edit pad.

CHECKING YOUR SPELLING

#### Adding a Word to the Dictionary

PenPoint refers to the 77,000 word Proximity/Merriam-Webster Linguibase when it translates your writing and checks your spelling. You can add words, such as company names or acronyms, to a separate personal dictionary so PenPoint will recognize them. You can add words to your personal dictionary from the spelling checker, from the proof sheet, or by writing them directly in the personal dictionary which is found in Tools.

Each time you tap the OK button on the proof sheet or the **Replace** button on the spelling checker to accept the word, you automatically add it to your personal dictionary.

To see the words you've added to the dictionary, open the personal dictionary in Tools. You can add to, delete, or edit the words there.



- **1** Tap to open Tools.
- **2** Tap to open the personal dictionary.

/ Person al D	Dictionary
Elena	1
Enrique	
Fabbro	
FestPak	Contract of the
Hopkins	
Huerta	
P.E.T.	
Polyethy lenete	phthalate
Schwartz /	
babaganoush	a designed out the s
TAUS.	-

- **3** To view the list of words, flick the page or tap the scroll arrows.
- 4 Delete a word by drawing a cross out X over it.
  - ▲ To add a new word, draw a caret ∧ and write in the new word.
  - ▲ To edit words, draw a circle ⊙ to open an edit pad and make changes there.

Read "Editing Text in Edit Pads" in this chapter to find out how to revise text in the edit pad.

# Adding your Signature to a Document

n many kinds of documents you can add a signature to your correspondence with the signature pad. Whatever you write on this pad appears untranslated in the printed document, as if you had written it directly on the page. You'll need a graphics printer to be able to print your signature.

	Package Desig	n Letter	<5>
Document Edit	Insert Case Form	nat	
Dear Ms. Huert	Space Tab Line Break		
We need a new condiments.	Page Break Paragraph Break	astic bottles for our	
Recently, an ex of our samples I our line. He brie his son ran into	Pop-up Pad Embedded Pad Signature Pad my icreane box c it with a tricycle	rmarket chain took a ry them before order n the kitchen floor wi	box ing here
Our bottles shou tricycle powered our new salsa br floor.	ild be able to wit I by a three year roke, spilling the	hstand the impact from old. But four bottles of ir contents all over the	na sf
The executive n	ever got a chanc	e to try our product.	Expera
Can you design bottle that won't travelling next v proposals at 415	a lightweight, re t break under mo veek, but you ca 5/ 345-9833.	cyclable, 8 oz. plastic derate impact? I'll be n fax me suggested	saduse avi
Sincerely			
Rocked Hants		en anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Frainn 1 - Anna Anna Anna Anna Frainn Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna	
Richard Hopkin New Product St	s ipervisor		

- **1** To add a signature to a MiniText document, tap to select a location in the document.
- **2** Choose Signature Pad from the Insert menu.
  - ▲ If necessary, resize the pad by dragging the corner handle.
- **3** Write your signature naturally, in whatever style you normally use within the borders of the signature pad. The borders won't be printed.
  - ▲ To delete a signature pad, tap the space immediately above the pad to select it. Then choose **Delete** from the Edit menu.
  - ▲ To move the pad, select the pad by tapping the space immediately above it, and then press and drag the signature pad to where you want it to go.

Once you've added a signature to a document you can fax it or print it with a graphics printer.

#### CHAPTER 8



# Finding Text

The PenPoint[™] operating system's Search command can find a specific word or phrase every time it appears in a document. If you wish, it will also replace it with different text. You can search an entire document or limit the scope of a search.



 To search the whole document, draw an F on the title line (or, choose Find from the Edit menu).

You'll see the Find dialog sheet.

- 2 Write in the text you want PenPoint to find.
- **3** Tap Find to find the first occurrence of the text.

Repeat this procedure until the message in the Status line tells you that the search is completed.

4 At any point you can tap Close to close the sheet and end the search.

If the Find field is filled in from the last time you searched the document, delete the text by drawing a cross out  $\chi$  on it and write in the new text. Or, tap **)** on the text to open an edit pad and change it there. Refer to "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text) for the details of editing text in fields.

You can also search for text by copying the text from the document to the Find field: select the text, copy it with the tap press gesture r, and drag it to the Find field.

If PenPoint can't find the text, you'll see the message Reached End in the Status line.

# Replacing Text

**U**se the Find & Replace sheet when you want to replace the text you find with other text.

At times you'll want to stop at each occurrence to decide whether to replace it. For example, if you're replacing a word with another one, you might want to check the usage in each sentence to make sure it's correct. In this case tap **)** Find and then **Replace** each time.

If you want to replace all occurrences of a word automatically throughout the document, tap **Replace All**. For example, if you're revising a contract for a new client, you can substitute the current client's name for the old one.

	CO	RACT	<21>
Docume	nt Edit Insert Case	Format	
Dear M	s. Huerta:		Ŷ
This is a new bot	our agreement conce tle design for New V	eming your involve World Foods, Inc.	ementin a
1. You drawin becom your se	Find & Replace Find: Status:	<ul> <li>Find &amp; Replace</li> </ul>	or
2. You every v you con	Find	Close	re
3. New estimate	World will pay each within thirty (30) d	invoice from an a ays.	pproved
4. You : will not contract	and your assistants a be employees of Ne ; for services for hire	t FastPak Design a w World Foods, Ii	are not and nc. This is a

 To search the whole document, draw an F on the title line. Or, choose Find from the Edit menu.

You'll see the Find dialog sheet.

2 Tap the arrow on the title line to see the list of sheets. Tap y Find & Replace.
#### USING PENPOINT



**3** Write in the text you want PenPoint to find in the Find field. Or, copy the text into the Find field.

Write in the replacement text in the **Replace** field.

- **4** To stop at each occurrence:
  - ▲ Tap Find to locate the first occurrence of the text.
  - ▲ Tap **Replace** if you want to insert the new text.

If you don't want to insert the text, tap **Find** to locate the next occurrence.

- ▲ Tap Find to continue the search.
- Repeat this procedure until the message in the Status line tells you that the search is completed.

To replace every occurrence automatically, tap **Replace All**.

At any point you can tap **Close** to close the sheet and end the search.

If the text in either the Find or Replace fields is filled in from the last time, delete the text by drawing a cross out  $\chi$  on it and write in the new text, or tap  $\downarrow$  the text to open an edit pad and change it there. See "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text) for details.

## Defining The Search

The search options on the Find & Replace sheet set the extent and direction of the search and the attributes to look for, such as whole words or words whose case matches exactly.

#### Setting the Search Range and Direction

You can tell PenPoint what part of the document to search, where to start the search, and in what direction to search.

To set the search range:

- To search forward from any point in a document, draw an F in the body of the document. PenPoint searches from the place you drew the gesture to the end of the document. To continue searching from the beginning of the document, tap Find again.
- To search a selection, select the text and draw an F over it.
- PenPoint searches the document itself and any embedded documents. However, you can restrict the search to the document by choosing Document Only from the Search category pop-up list.

#### USING PENPOINT DEFINING THE SEARCH



DEFINING THE SEARCH

## Refining the Search

PenPoint gives you several other ways to refine the search. For example, you can tell PenPoint to locate only those instances where the text forms a complete word. This is helpful when you want to find a word such as *pen* without stopping for words such as *depend* and *peninsula*.

1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.	CONTRACT	<21>	To refine the search, use the Find &
Document E	dit Insert Case Format	and the state of a	Replace sheet.
Document E Dear Ms. Hu Th ne Find: 1. Match: dr be Replace yc Use cas 2. Search: ev yc Directio Start Fr 3. Status:	dit Insert Case Format uerta: Find & Replace > Find & Replace FastPaK Design Same case only Complete word only Original word Proginal word Proginal word Include Embedded Docs Include Embedded Docs Include Embedded Docs Include Embedded Docs Include Embedded Docs Include Embedded Docs	Annent Sument Products Products	<ul> <li>Replace sheet.</li> <li>Same case only finds the text if it has the same case as the original text.</li> <li>Complete word only finds the text if it forms a whole word.</li> <li>Original word replaces text using the case of the original text.</li> <li>Replacement word replaces text with the case you used in the Replace field.</li> </ul>
4. F win not de e	and Replace Replace All Close	hd الله This is a الم	
contract for	services for hire.	ales	



The Table of Contents lists all the documents in your Notebook and lets you organize them. You can find out more about the documents with the Table of Contents' menus, such as the **Show** menu, which tells you the document's size and when you last modified it.

From the Table of Contents, you can organize the Notebook by moving documents and sections from one location to another and by placing related documents in sections. You can also customize the PenPoint[™] operating system to suit your work habits by setting preferences such as the writing pad style and screen layout.

When you use the Notebook you'll often work with more than one document at a time. There are several ways to do this. Each method offers its own advantages.

- The Table of Contents shows all the documents in the Notebook organized by section, which makes it easy to identify and turn to or float the one you want.
- Notebook tabs let you use a single tap to turn to a page or float it from anywhere in the Notebook.
- Page arrows in the title line let you navigate quickly from one page to another.
- Hyperlink buttons let you move directly to another location within the same document or a different document.

Before you can float documents, you must choose the Document Floating option on the Preferences Safeguards sheet.

## Seeing What's in Your Notebook

The Table of Contents lists all the documents and sections for the entire Notebook in the order in which they appear. Page numbers refer to the page in the Notebook where you can find the document.

No te book: Contents	<1>
Document Edit Create View Show Sort	
Name E	Page
Inventory     Standard Order Form     Proposed New Products     New Product Ideas.	A B Document titles appear in plain
Capers	7 text.
U Salfs. Customers Chain Stores. Completings to Actor	Double-tap : a section title to display its contents. Double-tap again to hide the document titles.
Rew Bottle Design     Salsa/Condiments     Package Design Letter     Processed New Design (32.91)	<ul> <li>Each section also has its own table</li> <li>of contents which works exactly like</li> <li>the one for the Notebook. Tap a</li> </ul>
Bottle Design Sketch CONTRACT CONTRACT	section's page number (or its icon) to turn to the section's table of contents.
New Product Draft	Icons tell you the type of application used to create the document.

In both the Notebook and the section tables of contents, you can use menus instead of double tapping to see what's in a section. Tap its title to select it and then choose **Expand** from the View menu. Choose **Collapse** from the View menu to hide the document titles again. To see all the titles in the Notebook, make sure nothing is selected on the Notebook Table of Contents and then choose **Expand**. (If a title is selected, tap it to deselect it.) To hide all the titles, make sure nothing is selected, and then choose **Collapse**.

As you create documents in the Notebook, the titles may not all fit on the screen. You can see more of them by using smaller icons next to the titles (and therefore decreasing the amount of space between titles). To change the size of the icons, choose **Button** from the Show menu.

To see a list of the documents contained in a section, double tap **.** the section's title. To float a document or section, double tap **.** its page number or icon.

## Finding Out More about a Document

The document option sheets and the Table of Contents Show menu give you two tools for getting information about a document, such as its size, the date you created it, and the program you used to create it. The Show menu gives you basic information about all the documents at once, whereas the document options sheets give you more detailed information about an individual document.

#### Using the Show menu

Vame	*	Button	ge.	Ivpe	
Current Products	1	Ture		Section	
Inventory		Date		MiniText	
Standard Order Form		Size		Арр	
Proposed New Products		Tab Box		Section	
New Product Ideas				MiniText	
Capers				MiniText	
Chili Mixes				MiniText	
Sales				Section	
Sales by Region			0	MiniText	
🗋 New Hires			1	MiniText	
Customers		manifest 1	2	Section	
Chain Stores		1	3	MiniText	
Complaints to Act on			4	MiniText	
New Bottle Design		1	5	Section	
Salsa/Condiments		same in the	6	MiniText	
🕒 Package Design Letter			7	MiniText	
🗋 Proposed New Design (3,	2,9	1)1	8	MiniText	
Bottle Design Sketch			9	DrawingPa	per
Revised Bottle FAX			0	FaxViewer	
			1	MiniText	
New Product Draft			2	MiniText	
			R.		

- **1** Tap **)** to display the Show menu.
- **2** Tap each kind of information you want to see; tap again to hide it.
  - ▲ A single vertical line next to the choices indicates a check list from which you can choose one option. A double line indicates a multiple check list from which you can choose more than one.

Tap **Icon** to show the standard sized application icon.

Tap **Button** to display a smaller icon next to the title.

Tap **Type** to see the application name.

Tap **Date** to find out the date on which you last modified the document.

Tap Size to tell how large the document is in kilobytes (a kilobyte contains approximately 250 words).

Tap Tab Box to display the column of tab boxes (tap to add or remove a Notebook tab).

#### FINDING OUT MORE ABOUT A DOCUMENT

## Using the Document Option Sheets

The document option sheets supplement the information in the Table of Contents. Refer to them to see information such as the size of the document when it's active and to change things such as the page display.



Use the Title & Info sheet to enter information about the document and to find out when you created or last changed it. You can also find out how much space the document occupies in the Notebook when you're not using it (Filed Size) and how much memory it takes up when you're working with it (Active Size).

The Access sheet determines what areas of the page PenPoint displays. This is also where you protect the document from being accidentally deleted or edited. An **Access Speed** option lets you cut down the time it takes to turn to a document. (Note that this option uses more memory than the normal page turn speed.)

Refer to the Application sheet for information such as the version of the application you're using.

You can also open the document option sheets by choosing **About** from the Document menu. Choosing **About** from the Table of Contents displays the option sheet for the Table of Contents.

# Sorting the Table of Contents

**C**ommands in the Sort menu let you rearrange the Table of Contents, reordering the titles by different criteria to more easily see what's in your Notebook. For example, you can list documents in order of size so you can decide which ones to store outside of the Notebook.

Notebook: Conten	its 🚬	< 1>
Document Edit Create View Show	Sort	
Name Current Products Standard Order Form. Customers	By Page By Name By Type By Date ✔ By Size	Page 2 
Chain Stores		12
Complaints to Act On		13
Rew Bottle Design	and the second second second	
🗅 New Package Design Ltr.	A STATE OF TAXABLE	16
Proposed New Design (3/2/91)		
🗅 Salsa/Condiments		15
Proposed New Products		4
🕒 Capers		6
🗅 Chili Mixes		7
🖞 New Product Ideas		5
Sales		. 8
D New Hires		. 10
🖞 Sales by Region		9

Tap the Sort menu, then tap:

By Page to display the documents in the order they appear in the Notebook (the default order unless you change it).

**By Name** to list the documents alphabetically.

**By Type** to group the documents by application.

By Date to put the documents in order by the date you last modified them.

By Size to arrange the documents according to the amount of memory they occupy in the Notebook.

The Sort commands for **Type**, **Date**, and **Size** also appear on the Show menu. Choose the same command from the Show menu to see the information for the titles you're sorting.

Sorting documents rearranges their order in the Table of Contents but not their page location in the Notebook.

# Rearranging the Notebook

You can rearrange documents in the Notebook by moving pages and placing related documents in sections. Rearranging pages changes their location in the Notebook.

## Moving Pages

The easiest way to reorder documents is to move them in the Table of Contents.

Notebook: Contents	< 1>
Document Edit Create View Show Sort	
Name	Page
Current Products	2
🗅 Standard Order Form	3
Proposed New Products	4
C: New Productide as	5 7
	6
D Chili Mixes	
Q Sales	

Complaints to Act on	
🕅 New Bottle Design	
Salsa/Condiments	
Aew Package Design Lfr.	
Proposed New Design (3/2/91)	
DESIGN Sketch	
BRevised Bottle FAX	

Complaints to Act on	13	Pa
New Bottle Design	14	oduc
2 galsa/Condiments	15	8
Revised Bottle FAX	16	sele
🛛 🛛 New Package Design Ltr.	17	100
Proposed New Design (3/2,91)	18	istor
Bottle Design Sketch	19	nea
		He
		Bo
	in the second	ΙŤ

Press y until you see the marquee, and then drag the document where you want it to go.

PenPoint inserts the new document where you lift your pen.

- ▲ To move it between two documents, lift the pen in the space between them.
- ▲ To move it into a section, lift the pen when the marquee is aligned with the other documents in the section.
- ▲ To move it out of a section, lift the pen when the marquee is lined up with a title or blank space outside the section.

# Grouping Documents into Sections

You can organize your computer Notebook as you would a paper notebook, placing related pages together in sections and subsections.

## Creating a Section

Document Edit C	reate view Show Son	and the strong of the
Name		Page
Current Produc	ts	
Standard O	rder Form	3
Proposed New	Products.	
🗋 New Produ	Business	5
🗅 Chili Mixes	Memo	6
Capers	Section	7
🕼 Sales 👘		
C Sales by Re	gion	9
C New Hires		10

- **1** Turn to the Table of Contents.
- **2** Draw a caret  $\wedge$  where you want the new section.

The pop-up Create menu appears.

**3** Choose Section from the pop-up Create menu.

PenPoint inserts the new section where you drew the caret.

To rename a section, draw a circle  $\circ$  on the title to put it into an edit pad where you can change it. Or select the section by tapping on it and then choose **Rename** from the File menu.

When you create a section, PenPoint automatically inserts a section divider that lists the section's documents and works exactly like the Notebook Table of Contents.

To delete a section, draw a cross out  $\chi$  on the section title. If you intend to use the section again, back it up to a disk before deleting it from the Notebook.

#### GROUPING DOCUMENTS INTO SECTIONS

#### Moving a Document into a Section

Once you create a new section you can create documents there or move existing documents into it.

To create a new document inside a section, double tap  $\cdot$  the section title to expand it, draw a caret  $\wedge$  where you want the new document to go, and then choose a piece of stationery from the Create menu. (Or tap to select a location—tap Empty if there are no documents—and then choose a piece of stationery from the Create menu.).

Note book: Contents	<1>
Document Edit Create View Show Sort	
Name	Page
Current Products	2
Standard Order Form	3
Proposed New Products	4
🖹 New Product Ideas	
Capers	6
🖹 Chili Mixes	
District Sales	8
Empty	
Sales	9
🗋 Sales by Region	
D New Hires	

Customers	
Chain Stores	
Complaints to Act on	
New Bottle Design	
A Salsa Condiments	
🖹 Package Design Letter	
Proposed New Design (3/2/91)	
Battle Design Sketch	
Revised Bottle FAX	
CONTRACT	
New Product Draft	

To move a document into a section, press > the title until you see the marquee, then drag the document to a location in the section.

To move a document out of a section, press > the title until you see the marquee, and then drag the document out of the section. (Lift the pen when the tip of the pen is lined up with the beginning of a title outside a section.)

#### GROUPING DOCUMENTS INTO SECTIONS

#### Creating a Subsection

Sections can contain subsections. To create a subsection, open a section, select a location in it, and choose **Section** from the Create menu.

Subsections work the same way sections do. Each subsection has its own table of contents that lists the documents it contains. This information is repeated in the section and Notebook Table of Contents.

You can make an existing section into a subsection by moving it into another section. For example, you might move a section you'd created for a prospective client into a section for new clients.

You can also do the reverse and make a subsection a section by selecting it and moving it out of the section to another location on the Table of Contents.

#### Creating Multiple Notebooks

If you find that you're creating many sections in your Notebook, you may find it simpler to organize your work by creating notebooks for each primary topic, for example, for each major client or project. Similarly, if you're sharing the Notebook with several other people, you may find it convenient to create a notebook for each user.

To find out how to create and use multiple notebooks, read chapter 12, Learning More About PenPoint.

## Turning to a Page

The Table of Contents displays all the documents in the Notebook. From the Table of Contents you can use gestures to turn to a document or to float a document.



Before you can float a document, you need to choose the option for floating documents on the Safeguards option sheet in Preferences. You need to set this option only once to be able to float documents any time you use the Notebook.

187

#### TURNING TO A PAGE

Instead of using gestures to turn to or float a page, you can choose equivalent commands (**Turn to** and **Bring to**) from the View menu. Select the title in the Table of Contents by tapping it and then choose the appropriate command.

If you're not working on the Table of Contents you can thumb through the Notebook by pressing the arrows near the page number.

	New Product Ideas	i>
Document B	Edit Insert Case Format	
TO:	Dick Hopkins	Ŷ
FROM:	Enrique Fabbro	ntent
DATE:	February 2, 1991	Our
SUBJECT:	New Product Ideas	Rent P
cc:	Test Kitchens, Sara Schwartz	ID U U U
Dick I was fiddlin recipes the - might try to vegetable. I storage, and well on the especially p	ng around with some of my mother's old other day and I came up with several ways we market eggplant which is a good stable t's cheap to grow and it survives well in cldo I various preparations of it seem to hold up shelf. I think these new products might be opular in the Southwest and in California	Proposed New Products Sales

Tap the left arrow to go back a page.

Tap the right arrow to turn to the next page.

Press either arrow to flip through the pages.

You can also draw flicks in the title line to turn to the next page (flick left) — or go back to the previous page (flick right) —. Think of this as thumbing through a notebook; you turn a page to the left to see the next page, and to the right to go back toward the beginning.

## Using Notebook Tabs to Mark Pages

Notebook tabs offer a quick way to identify a page and turn to it or float it. You can attach a tab to any document or section by drawing a T on the title or by displaying the column of tab boxes and tapping the one for that document.

#### Attaching and Deleting Notebook Tabs

Notebook: Contents	<1.>	<b>1</b> Turn to the Table of Contents.	
Document Edit Create View Show Sort			
Name	Page [0]		
Current Products	. 2 🖁		
🗅 Standard Order Form	. 3 <del>8</del>		
Proposed New Products	. 4 😫		
🗅 New P <b>f</b> od <del>uct Ideas</del>	5 2	- ? To attach a tab draw a T on the	
	6 7	de sum ont on contion title	
🗅 Chili Mixes	7 duct	document of section title.	
<b>G</b> Sales	. 8 📳	▲ To remove it, draw the T agair	n.
🗅 Sales by Region	. 9 0	C	
🗅 New Hires	10		
Customers	11		
🗅 Chain Stores	. 12 g		
🗅 Complaints to Act On	13 5		
🕅 New Bottle Design	14 👷		
Salsa/Condiments	15		

When you attach a tab, PenPoint automatically labels it with the document title. However, a long document title may not fit on the tab, so you can rename the tab with a shorter or more useful title. Draw a circle  $\circ$  on the tab to display the title in the edit pad and change it there.

Usually renaming a document automatically changes its tab label as well. However, if you change the document title after editing the tab label, PenPoint doesn't automatically change the tab label. (That way you don't lose the shorter tab label.)

For details on editing tab labels, see "Editing Text in Labels and Document Titles" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

If you're working on a page other than the Table of Contents, you can also attach a tab by drawing a **T** on the document title line. USING NOTEBOOK TABS TO MARK PAGES

Attaching Several Notebook Tabs

In managing the Notebook, you may find it more convenient to attach and remove several tabs at once.

Notebook: Contents			< 1>	
Document Edit Create View	Show Sort			
Name	✓ Icon Button	Page.	Tab	
Current Products	Tuno		R2	
🗋 Standard Order Form	Date			
Proposed New Products	Size		62	
🗅 New Product Ideas	🖌 Teb Box			
Capers				
🗅 Chili Mixes				
Sales			60	
🗅 Sales by Region				
🗅 New Hires				
			Đ	
Chain Stores				
Complaints to Act on				
New Bottle Design			R	
B Salsa Condiments				
New Package Design Ltr				
Pronosed New Design (32.91)				

- **1** Turn to the Table of Contents.
- **2** Tap **Tab Box** on the Show menu.

▲ A check mark in the box indicates the page has a tab.

To attach a tab, tap inside the box.

▲ To remove it, tap again.

## Displaying Notebook Tabs

When you have more tabs than can fit along the edge of the notebook, they appear overlapped. To see the hidden labels, draw flicks on the tabs.



[wProduct] ] ] ] ] ] <del>and ]</del> Phone] ] ]

8

Contents

w Product

Personal ne

Flick left - to see all the tabs at once.

- ▲ Tap a tab to turn to its page.
- ▲ Tap anywhere outside the tabs to collapse the rows into one.

To push the overlapped tabs to the top, double flick up l anywhere in the row.

▲ To shove the overlapped tabs to the bottom, double flick down || anywhere in the row.

To see an overlapped tab, flick down) on the overlapped tap.

▲ Or, flick up on the tab above it.



# Using Hyperlink Buttons to Move between Pages

Hyperlink buttons give you a way to turn quickly to another document or a location in the same document. For example, if you're working on the conclusion to a monthly report and want to refer to a table earlier in the document, you might insert a button at the concluding paragraph to scroll to the table and one on the table to go back to the paragraph.

Case Format Ne 19 Los Ang Fe	w World Foods 271 Palm Blvd, eles, CA 90036 oruary 17, 1991
Ne 19 Los Ang Fe	w World Foods 271 Palm Blvd, eles, CA 90036 oruary 17, 1991
Fe	oruary 17, 1991 📲
MILL LO	
NOTEBOOK: CONTR	ents 1 S
ment Edit Create Vi	ew Show Sort
Chili Mixes	8 1 8
ales	g
Sales by Region	10 ខ្មី
New Hires	
ustomers	12 💦 🦉
Chain Stores	
] Complaints to Action	14
lew Bottle Design	
] Salsa/Condiments	
] Package Design Lett	er
ר Proposed New Desic	n (3,2,91) 18 🔮 👌
able to withstand the	e impact from a 🛛 🐺
spilling their contents	s all over the $\frac{1}{2}$
	e D
	a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a
got a chance to try of	
tweight, recyclable,	8 oz. plastic
aunder moderate im	pact? I'll be
but you can fax me : 0022	uggested
he executive never o	of a chance to try our
omplaints to Act on	out chance to up our
an you design a ligh	weight, recyclable, 8
	Notebook: Conte ment Edit Create Vie Chili Mixes ales Sales by Region New Hires Ustomers Chain Stores Chain Stores Contalaints to Acton lew Bottle Design Salsa/Condiments Package Design Lette Proposed New Desig able to withstand the three year old. But f spilling their contents got a chance to try ou itweight, recyclable, under moderate imp but you can fax me s .9833. he executive never gramps ints to Acton an you design a light

- 1 Start in the document where you want to add a hyperlink button.
- 2 Float the Table of Contents by double tapping . its tab. (You must have the floating option turned on.)
- **3** Tap to select the document you want to jump to. If you tap the document title, the hyperlink button takes you to the top of the document.
  - ▲ To go to a specific place within the document, float it and tap to select a location.
- 4 Draw a hyperlink gesture ⊙ on the first document where you want the button.

The PenPoint operating system places a hyperlink button there and labels it with the title of the floating document (or if you've selected a location, with the text where you drew the gesture).

Hyperlink buttons work like page numbers in the Table of Contents: Tap the button to turn to the linked document or double-tap to float the linked document over the first.

#### USING HYPERLINK BUTTONS TO MOVE BETWEEN PAGES

Once you've created a button, you can move it to another location or redefine it. To move it, press r on it until you see the marquee, then drag it to a new location. To copy it, tap press r until you see the double marquee and then drag it to where you want it.

By redefining a button, you can turn a hyperlink button into a temporary marker. To reset it for another location, select the new location by tapping it, and then triple tap i on the button. The button title then changes to reflect the new location.

To make a link to an embedded document, float the document that contains the embedded document, draw a plus + on the embedded document's icon to select it, and then draw a hyperlink button gesture  $\odot$  on the first document.

If you're working on part of the document where the button is out of view, you can move the button to the cork margin where it's always available. To find out how to use the cork margin, see chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents.

To delete a hyperlink button, draw a cross out  $\chi$  over it. You can rename the button label by drawing a circle  $\circ$  on it and editing the text. See "Editing Text in Labels and Document Titles" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

When you print the document, PenPoint prints the button icon and the text on it. To avoid printing the button, move it to the cork margin.

# Setting Preferences

**Y**our Notebook comes with certain options preset, such as the screen layout. You can change the preset options in Preferences on the Bookshelf. The options are grouped on separate sheets in Preferences.

Preference sheet	Options on sheet
PenPoint	Find out information about the PenPoint operating system such as the company name and version number.
Handwriting	Choose a case (all upper case or mixed). Choose a writing pad style and adjust the size and shape of the boxes or the distance between lines (covered in chapter 6, Writing in the Notebook). Choose a symbol for the unrecognized character (covered in chapter 6, Writing in the Notebook).
Pen	Set the angle of the pen for the way you normally write. Choose the pen or keyboard as the primary way to enter text (covered in chapter 6, Writing in the Notebook).
Fonts & Layout	Choose a portrait or landscape screen orientation, or a left- or right-handed layout. Choose a system font and a font for text in fields, and a size for both.
Time	Set the time.
Date	Set the date.
Safeguards	Turn on floating and zooming (covered in chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents). Turn on the warning beep. Set auto shutoff to have the computer automatically turn off after a certain period of inactivity.
Timeouts	Lengthen or shorten the time PenPoint waits before interpreting your gestures or writing.
Memory Usage	Find out how much memory is available (covered in chapter 12, Learning More About PenPoint).

If more than one person uses the computer, you can have PenPoint remember each user's choices. To find out how to save your preferences, read chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices.

## Setting the Time

Applications and accessories that display the time and date use the settings on the Preferences option sheet.

∐ Sales b	Preferences ▶ Time	
🗋 New Hit		
Customers	Current Time: 3:16 A.M.	
Chain 9	Time Zone:	
	Format: > 12 Hour	
Revised	Seconds: Not Displayed	
New Pa	Hour.	
Propose		
Bottle Desig	Minute:	
Salsa/Conc	4 5	
	Second:	
	<u> 3 0</u>	
	<b>A.M./P.M.</b> ► A.M.	
	Apply Apply & Close Close	

To reset the time:

- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf.
  - ▲ If the Time option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and choose Time.

Tap the current **Time Zone** choice to see a list of other time zones and tap to choose one.

Tap to choose a 12- or 24-hour **Time Format**.

Tap **Displayed** in the **Seconds** category to show the seconds; tap **Not Displayed** to hide this information.

Write in the new Hour, Minute, and Second.

Tap to choose A.M. or P.M.

2 Tap Apply & Close.

If you change time zones, you don't need to reset the time. Choose a time zone and PenPoint automatically calculates the new time.

Setting the Date



To change the date:

- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf.
  - ▲ If the Date sheet is not displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the other Preferences sheets and tap Date.

Tap the current **Date Format** to see a list of other formats and tap to choose one.

Tap the name of the month and tap to choose the correct one.

Write in the numbers for the correct **Day** and **Year**. To change a number, write a new number over the old one.

2 Tap Apply & Close.

## Setting the Response Time

You can lengthen or shorten the interval, or **timeout**, before PenPoint interprets a gesture, translates your writing, or displays the marquee that appears when you use the press **b** gesture to move something. By resetting the timeout interval, you can better accommodate the rate at which you naturally work.

To change the response time:

- Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open it.
- If the Timeouts sheet is not displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the other Preferences sheets and tap Timeouts.
- To change the **Gesture**, **Handwriting**, or **Press** timeout interval, write in the number of seconds you want PenPoint to wait before responding to an action. To change what's already written in a box, write a new number over the old one.

## Using the Auto Shut Off Option

When you don't have the PenPoint computer attached to a battery charger, you can conserve battery power by having the computer turn off automatically when you're not using it. To do so:

- Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf to open it.
- If the Safeguards sheet is not displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the other Preferences sheets Safeguards.
- Tap Yes for the Auto Shut Off option. If you tap Yes, PenPoint adds a Shut Off After category.
- If you want the computer to stay on, tap No.
- Write in the number of minutes the computer can be inactive before it automatically turns off. To change what's already written in a box, write a new number over the old one.

## Turning On the Warning Beep

When PenPoint displays a confirmation or error message, you must respond to it before PenPoint can continue. As an additional signal, you can have PenPoint sound a warning beep when it displays a message.

To turn on the warning beep, display the Safeguards sheet in Preferences and tap **On**.

#### Choosing PenPoint Fonts and Field Fonts

The PenPoint operating system uses a system font to display information such as menu commands and titles on the Table of Contents and Notebook tabs. The field font is for the information you enter in writing pads and fields on option sheets and forms.

You can choose a different PenPoint and field font. Whatever size you choose, however, applies to both fonts.



- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf.
  - ▲ If the Fonts & Layout sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the other Preferences sheets and tap Fonts & Layout.
- **2** To change the font:
  - ▲ Tap to choose a PenPoint and Field font.
  - ▲ Tap to choose a font size.
- 3 Tap Apply & Close.

Choose text fonts for documents from the Text option sheets. To find out how to style text by changing fonts, read chapter 7, Editing and Formatting Text.

## Choosing a Screen Layout

PenPoint offers several screen layouts to accommodate different writing tasks and writing preferences.

	New Product	ldeas	<6 →
Document Ec	dit Insert Case Form	at	
TO:	Dick Hopkins		
FROM:	Enrique Fabbro	Statute and	
DATE:	February 2, 1991		
SUBJECT:	New Product Ideas		
CC:	Test Kitchens, San	a Schwartz	The second secon
Dick L was fiddlin	around with some	of my mother'	sold Pop
recipes the o	ther day and I came	up with severa	al ways we
vegetable. It	s c Preferences	<ul> <li>Fonts &amp; Las</li> </ul>	cout
storage, and	vai	, rone a zaj	rödu
well on the s. especially no	nel PenPoint Font:	Sans Seri	f(URW)
where they're	Field Font:	🕨 🕨 Roman (U	IRW)
what you this	nk. Font Size:	<u>→ 12</u>	-
	Orientation	Portrait	
Eggplant di	D U LD (	P Lanuseop	e and the second
(We'll need a	Hand Preference	∋: ≯ Right	New
babaganoush	i th		Bot
shelf storage	. It 12)		The second se
lemon, olive	oil		đ.
problems wit	h t		2
which is very	rui Apply Api	oly & Close C	lose
binding agen	it to sorve ans.		State of the second second
Southwester	CULCS VINIO OF		
2			
Help Preferenc	es Tools Stationery		
		Document E	dit Insert Case Fo
		TO:	Dick Hopkins
		FROM:	Enrique Fabbro
		DATE:	February 2, 199
		SUBJECT :	New Product Ide
		CC;	Test Kitchens, S
		Dick	
		I was fiddlin	ng around with som
		several way	s we might try to m
		grow and it	survives well in clo

- **1** Tap the Preferences icon on the Bookshelf.
  - ▲ If the Fonts & Layout sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line and tap to choose the Fonts & Layout sheet.
- **2** Tap the appropriate option:
  - ▲ Tap to choose a Landscape Orientation when you're working on a drawing or a task that requires more horizontal than vertical space on the page.
  - ▲ Tap to choose a **Portrait Orientation** to work with a vertical screen layout.
  - ▲ Tap to choose the Hand Preference that corresponds to the hand you write with. Choosing Left places the scroll margin on the left side of the screen.
- **3** Tap **Apply & Close**. The screen will change to reflect the layout or preference you've chosen.

	New Product Ideas
Document E	dit Insert Case Format
TO:	Dick Hopkins
FROM:	Enrique Fabbro
DATE:	February 2, 1991
SUBJECT:	New Product Ideas
CC:	Test Kitchens, Sara Schwartz
Dick I was fiddlir several way grow and it the shelf. It California v	g around with some of my mother's old recipes the other day and I came up with s we might try to market eggplant which is a good stable vegetable. It's cheap to survives well in cldo storage, and various preparations of it seem to hold up well on hink these new products might be especially popular in the Southwest and in there they're rediscovering vegetables. Let me know what you think Enrique
Eggplant d	

## Moving Items on the Bookshelf

You'll probably find that you use some items on the Bookshelf more frequently than others. You can move the ones you use less often to a second shelf and also rearrange the order to suit you.

For example, once you've customized the notebook and the Create menu, you might move the Preferences icon and Stationery notebook to the second shelf and put in their place the In and Out boxes you use daily to send and receive faxes.



Clock Notebook ? Help Preferences Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer in Out

- To rearrange items on the Bookshelf:
- **1** Drag the bottom handle of the current page up to see the second shelf.
- 2 Press > the icon until you see the marquee and then drag it to the second shelf.

To hide all the Bookshelf items, drag the handle down until it covers both shelves.

# Customizing the Help Notebook

When you're working with the Help notebook, you may find it useful to annotate it with tips and information you've discovered while working with the PenPoint operating system.

To add a new document, draw a caret  $\wedge$  on the Table of Contents where you want it to go and choose a piece of stationery from the Create menu. (To find out more about how to create a document, see chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents.)

If you no longer need to refer to a document, you can delete it by drawing a cross out  $\chi$  on its entry in the Table of Contents.

If you find you no longer use Quick Help or the Help notebook, you can delete both by crossing out  $\chi$  the Help icon on the Bookshelf. If you've customized the Help notebook you might want to copy it onto a disk before you delete it. (See chapter 11, Filing Documents to find out how to use the Disk Manager to make a backup copy.)

## Using the Clock

To display the time and date, use the clock, which is in Tools on the bookshelf. You can set the alarm to beep or to show reminder messages, and you can put other documents, like to-do lists and calendars on the clock's cork margin, which appears with the reminder messages.



- **1** Tap Tools to open it.
- **2** Tap the Clock icon.

	Dama
	ck 2
Standard 8:52 A.M. No	ember 28, 1990 3

To move it, put the pen down anywhere on the clock and drag it.

To have it always on display, move it to the Bookshelf or to the document title line.

Tap the close corner to close it.

You can also use the clock to date or time stamp a document automatically when you print it. To do that, copy the clock to a location in a document.

Set the time and date for the clock on the Time sheet in Preferences as explained in "Setting Preferences" earlier in this chapter. USING THE CLOCK

## Changing the Display

Use the clock's option sheets to choose a different display format.

Notebook: Contents	< 1>	<b>1</b> Draw a check $\checkmark$ on the c	lock.
Document Edit Create View Show Sort           Name           Image: Comment Products           Image: Comment Products           Image: Comment Products	2	<ul> <li>If the Display option sh showing, tap the arrow title line and choose Di</li> </ul>	ieet isn't on the splay.
Proposed New Products     New Product I     New Product I     Chili Mixes 3:45 A.M. November 26, 1990			
Capers Sales Sales by Region	Piduete Piduete Pid	<b>2</b> Tap the Show option to so other choices; tap to choo	ee a list of ose one.
Clock ▶ Display     Clock ▶ Display     Cock ▶ Display     Che Show: ▶ Time Followed by Date     Cot Foot     Cot Foot	10 posed 11 sed 12 set	Tap to choose a font for t and time.	he date
New B     Date Size: ▶ 14       Image: Big Rev     Time Size: ▶ 14		Choose a separate font siz date and time.	e for the
Pro Apply Apple & Close Close     Salsa/Condiments	17 Customer 	<b>3</b> Tap Apply & Close.	

To hide the clock's borders or title line, draw a B on the clock or choose the appropriate options on the Access sheet. To close the clock tap its close corner.

#### USING THE CLOCK

## Setting the Alarm

The alarm has several settings; you can decide when and how frequently you want the alarm to sound and whether to display a message. You can also set the alarm to display a message without a beep.

	Notebook: Contents	$\langle 1 \rangle$
ocument Edit	Create View Show Sort	
Name D Current Pro		<u>Page</u> 2
🔄 🗋 Standan	3 8:58 A.M. November 28, 1990	
J Proposed N	lew Products	4
	Clock 🕨 Alarm	
Alarm:	▶ Off	
Day:	This Day	
Time:	10.30 AM	
Message:	Print letter for FedEx	
Options:	<ul> <li>✓ Repeat in S min.</li> <li>Dismiss Note After 6 sec.</li> <li>✓ Tone</li> </ul>	
Cork margin for the note:	New Package Design Ltr	
	Apply Apply & Close Close	

- **1** Draw a check  $\checkmark$  on the clock.
  - ▲ If the Alarm sheet isn't showing, tap the arrow on the title line to see the list and tap Alarm.

You'll see a sheet with settings for turning the alarm on and off, setting the time and the day of the week, writing the message you want to see, and determining how often the alarm will sound.

Place any documents, buttons, or accessories you want to appear with the reminder message in the **Cork margin**.

If you decide you don't want the alarm to go off at the time you've set, open the clock option sheet and turn off the Alarm. To revise a message, open the clock option sheet and delete or edit the message. If the Notebook is turned off, the alarm will turn on the computer so you can see any reminder messages. (Be sure to turn on the **Auto Shut Off** option on the Preferences Safeguard sheet so that when the alarm turns on the computer, the computer won't stay on if you're not there.)

You can set the alarm so it goes off regularly at the date and time you've set by choosing **Reset for same time**. To have the alarm sound again in a few minutes after it first goes off, write in a number of minutes in the **Repeat** field.

For an explanation of editing text in fields, read "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

# Printing, Sending, and Receiving Documents

Once you create a document you can print it, fax it, or send it as electronic mail. You can also receive incoming documents and faxes. If you're connected to a printer or a fax/data modem, you can print or send documents as soon as you've finished them. If you're not connected, the PenPointTM operating system stores the document in the **Out box** with your printing or mailing instructions.

Printers come with **printer drivers** which tell the PenPoint computer how to use the printer. You need to install the printer driver with the Installer the same way you install other applications in your Notebook.

After installing the driver in your Notebook, you set options for it with the **Printers** tool so that the PenPoint operating system knows, for example, to which **port** you'll connect. You only set these options once for each printer you plan to use. Thereafter, just choose the **Print** command.

To find out how to connect the printer to your computer, read chapter 13, Setting up Your Computer. To learn how to copy the printer driver to your Notebook and set options for it, read chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices. If you plan to use a printer on a network, refer to *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

## Printing a Document

**B**efore you print a document you can format it by setting margins and adding headers and footers with the **Print Setup** command on the Document menu. Then, when you're ready to print it, choose the **Print** command, also on the Document menu.

## Choosing a Page Layout

	New Product Ideas	<5>
Document	Edit Insert Case Format	
Checkpoint Revert	ppkins	Ŷ
Print	nrique Fabbro	
Print Setup	ebruary 2, 1991	
About	ew Product Ideas	
cc:	Print Setup 🕨 Layout	
	Orientation:  Portrait	
Dick	Paper Size: > US Standard	
I was fidd recipes the might try	Top Margin:         1         0         0         in.	iens I.
vegetable. storage, ar	Bottom Margin:	
well on the especially where the	Left Margin: 1 . 0 0	
what you	Right Margin:	
<b>Eggplant</b> (We'll nee	Apply Apply & Obse Close	
babaganou shelf storag	sh that I think will stand up well to long-ten ge. It involves roasting the eggplants (which	n we

- 1 Choose Print Setup from the Document menu.
  - If the Layout sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the list of sheets and tap Layout.
- **2** Set the appropriate options.
  - Choose a page layout from the Orientation pop-up list.

Choose **Portrait** to position the document vertically on the screen; **Landscape** to position it horizontally.

- ▲ Choose a Paper Size.
- Write in the number of inches for each margin.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

You can print the document without changing the Print Setup options. (The PenPoint operating system uses the default settings.) When you change the options, PenPoint applies them to each subsequent printing of that document.

> To change the number in any of the boxed fields, write a new number over the old one. See "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text) for more information on how to edit text in boxes.
PRINTING A DOCUMENT

Adding Headers and Footers

Package Des	sign Letter	<6>
Dooument Edit Insert Case Fo	ormat	
Checkpoint Revert Print Setup. About FastPak Design	New World Fo 19271 Palm B Los Angeles, CA 90 February 17, 1	ods î lvd. 991
3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321	Print Setup	Layout • Headers & Footers
	Header Font:	Roman (URW)
	Header Size:	▶ 14
	Header Margin:	0. <u>5</u> 0
	Footer Margin:	0.50
	On First Page:	→ Yes
	Header (left):	New World Foods
	Header (center):	
	Header (right):	<b>Pg.</b>
	Footer (left):	
	Footer (center): Footer (right):	
	Apply A	oply & Olose Clase

- 1 Choose Print Setup from the Document menu.
  - ▲ If the Headers & Footers sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the list of sheets and tap Headers & Footers.
- **2** Set the appropriate options.
  - ▲ Choose a Header Font and Header Size. (Whatever font and size you select will also be used for the footer.)
  - ▲ Write in the number of inches for the Header Margin from the top of the page to header, and for the Footer Margin from the bottom of the page to the footer.
  - ▲ Choose Yes to print a header or footer on the First Page.
  - ▲ Write in the text for the Header and Footer.

You can enter text for one or more positions (left, center, right).

To print the current page number, write pg., including the period.

To print the current date, write dt., including the period.

To print the document name, write nm., including the period.

**3** Tap Apply & Close.

Then print the document to see the headers and footers.

PRINTING A DOCUMENT

### Printing a Document

You can print a document from its page in the Notebook or from the Table of Contents.

	C	ONTRACT	<21>	S
Document E	dit Insert Case	a Format		
Checkpoint Revert	erta:		Î	200-000 L
Print. Print Setup.	reement cond sign for New	cerning your involvement in World Foods, Inc.	ιa	Conten
About uramings w	to supply des Hew World. T	sign services and technical The designs and drawings		IS Curren
become the your servic		Print		IT Prod
A X7	Printer:	Sales Area		Q V
2. Your cos every week	Printer Enable	ad: • Yes		10
you contint	Paper Size:	▶ US Standard		hose.
3. New Wo	Pages:	► All		0.241 F
estimate wi	First Page #.			V L LOU M
4. You and				ŝ
will not be contract for	Copies:			oa no
5. If your d	Collate:	No		04010
stresses, he	Print	Print & Close Close		100
t, you win World agree	S IL SULTING AR	ucara la aucunate comis		
before using	g it for shipping	g our products. We will thus	;	

To print a document from its page in the Notebook:

- **1** From the document, choose **Print** from the Document menu.
- **2** Choose the appropriate options.
  - ▲ Tap to choose a printer from the **Printer** pop-up list.
  - ▲ If you're connected to the printer, tap Yes from the Printer Enabled pop-up list. If not, tap No and PenPoint places the document in the Out box.
  - ▲ Choose a Paper Size.

If you're printing on a size not included on the pop-up list, write in the dimensions for the paper's width (w) and height (h) in the Other category.

▲ To print the entire document, choose All from the Pages pop-up list. Or, write in the range of pages.

#### USING PENPOINT PRINTING A DOCUMENT

and the second second	Print
Printer:	<ul> <li>Sales Area</li> </ul>
Printer Enabled:	Yes
Paper Size:	▶ US Standard
Pages:	► All
First Page #:	1
Copies:	1
Collate:	• No
Print I	Print & Olose Close

▲ Write in the page number that should appear on the First Page you print. (Use this to paginate separate documents continuously.)

To change a number, write the new number on top of the old one.

- Write in the number of **Copies** you want printed.
- ▲ If you're printing more than one copy, choose Yes from the Collate pop-up list.
- **3** Tap Print & Close.

To print a document from the Table of Contents, select the document title, choose **Print** from the Document menu, and then follow the steps for printing a document.

#### PRINTING A DOCUMENT

If you don't see the printer you want to use on the **Printer** pop-up list, you need to install a printer driver for it. Refer to chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices for information. To find out more about how to edit text in boxes, read "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

When you're printing on letterhead stationery, check to see how much space you need to leave for the imprint and adjust the document, header, and footer margins accordingly. If you routinely print your documents on letterhead, you might create stationery for it with the margins preset. To find out how to do this, read "Creating Customized Stationery" in chapter 5, (Creating and Using Documents).

### Printing from the Out Box

If you're connected to a printer, PenPoint prints the document; otherwise it stores the document in the Out box with your print instructions. Later when you're connected to the printer, PenPoint prints the documents in the order that they're listed in the Out box. To tell PenPoint you're ready to print:

- tap the Out icon on the Bookshelf to open the Out box.
- tap the box next to the printer name in the **Enabled** column.

When you do so, PenPoint begins printing the documents. (If you connect to a TOPS printer, PenPoint automatically prints the documents even if you don't check the **Enabled** box.)

If you need to print one of the documents that appears later in the queue, you can change the printing order by moving the document you want to print to the top of the list.

### Printing Embedded Documents

When you print a document, the PenPoint operating system also prints all its embedded documents. If the embedded document is closed, PenPoint prints only its icon and title. If the embedded document is open, PenPoint prints the portion that's showing. You can resize the embedded document to print more or less of it, or you can use the **Print Entire Document** command on the embedded document's Print Setup menu.

The main document's Print Setup option sheets set the orientation and paper size for the embedded document and suppress other Print Setup options for the embedded document, such as margins, headers, and footers. If you want to format the embedded document with its own margins and headers and footers, you can do so by setting the Print Setup options for the embedded document and then selecting **Print Entire Document**. The PenPoint operating system prints the embedded document starting on a new page using the settings you've selected and then returns to the options for the document that contains it.

#### USING PENPOINT

#### PRINTING A DOCUMENT

/	Proposed New	/ Design (3/2/91)	(18)
Document E	dit Insert Case F	Format	active Sheat
Dear Mr. Ho	opkins:		Ŷ
I've received the New Wo common res is recyclable resistance go advantage of	l our department' rld Food's bottle in, polyethylene , lightweight, and al. Switching to ² giving us greate	s most recent proposal for design. They recommend terephthalate (PET), whic I achieves your breaking this resin also has the er design flexibility.	a h
E L	lottle Design Sketcl	n	
Document E	dit Grid Order O	Dptions	
Checkpoint		Children 🖓 Children Children	
Revert	Print Setup	o ▶ Layout	
Print Print Setup	Orientation:	▶ Portrait	
Beauly al	Paper Size:	▶ US Stand ard	
About Erase Red raw	Top Margin:		
	Bottom Margin:		
I faxed you received hi	Left Margin:		
We can go	Right Margin:		
next Tuesd if you've ar	Formatting:	Print Entire Document Keep on Same Page	
Sincerely,		Begin on New Page	
	Apply /	Apply & Close   Close	
? 🖌	r d	┓ ≟ 0.	8. L

To see how the embedded document gets printed within the container document:

- 1 Choose Print Setup from the embedded document's Document menu.
  - ▲ If the Layout sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the list of sheets and tap Layout.
- **2** The PenPoint operating system prints whatever shows on the screen.
  - ▲ To change what portion of the document PenPoint prints, resize it.
  - ▲ Or, print the entire document without resizing it by choosing **Print Entire Document** from the **Formatting** category.
  - ▲ If an embedded document is near the end of a page, select Keep on Same Page to prevent the contents from being split between two pages.
  - ▲ To make sure that an embedded document always begins on a new page, select **Begin on New Page**.
- **3** Tap Apply & Close.

To avoid printing an embedded document (open or closed), you can move it to the cork margin. See chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents, for details.

To print the embedded document without printing the main document, choose **Print** from the embedded document's Document menu.

If an embedded document is open, PenPoint normally doesn't print the menu and title line, borders, and scroll margins. However, some applications may print these elements. The guide that comes with the application will tell you how the application treats these elements when you print a document.

# Sending and Receiving Documents

To send or receive documents and information, connect the PenPoint computer to equipment such as the GO Fax/Data cartridge. After you install a driver for the equipment, you can use applications such as a fax or electronic mail service, or an information service.

As you do with the **Print** command, you can choose the **Send** command for a document at any time. If you're not connected to a fax/data modem, the PenPoint operating system stores the documents in the Out box with your mailing instructions. When you reconnect the modem, PenPoint automatically sends mail from the Out box and receives incoming mail which it places in the In box in the section for the appropriate service.

To send mail, select a document from the Table of Contents (or turn to the document) and choose **Send** from the Document menu. You'll see a pop-up list of the services you've installed on the computer. When you choose a service, you'll see a dialog sheet asking you for the appropriate mailing information. Consult the guide that comes with the application for instructions on addressing and sending your mail.

To read incoming mail, copy it from the In box to the Table of Contents. When you do so, PenPoint displays the Import sheet so you can choose an application to use with it.

Further information on sending and receiving documents will be included in the next version of *Using PenPoint*.

# Filing Documents

Managing the contents of the PenPoint computer is similar to managing the contents of a loose leaf binder. Periodically, you remove pages you've finished working with or won't need until a later date. Some documents get discarded, others copied for your files or for a colleague. You perform these filing tasks by copying and moving documents to and from disks.

You'll most often transfer documents *from* the PenPoint computer to a disk:

- to keep backup copies on a disk
- to use the space in the Notebook most efficiently
- to work with them on a PC.

You'll most often transfer documents to the PenPoint computer from a disk:

- to move documents stored on a disk back to the PenPoint computer so you can work on them again
- to work on a document created by someone else
- to restore an earlier version of a document
- to work on documents created on a PC.

You can transfer documents between the PenPoint computer and any connected **volume** (disk), such as the GO floppy disk. If you're using a new floppy disk, PenPoint will prompt you to **format** it when you insert the disk in the disk drive. If you have PenPoint TOPS, you can transfer documents to and from a PC disk or network disk. (Chapter 13, Setting up Your Computer explains how to connect the PenPoint computer to a GO floppy disk or to a PC; *Connecting to a Personal Computer* explains how to use TOPS with a PenPoint computer.)

You transfer documents by copying or moving them from the Notebook Table of Contents to the **Disk Manager** which is a table of contents for the documents on a disk.

The PenPoint[™] operating system stores documents in its own format, but if you have compatible applications you can continue working on them on a PC by changing the file format on the **export** sheet when you copy it to disk. Conversely, you can work on documents created on a PC by choosing a PenPoint application on the **import** sheet when you copy it to the Notebook.



Note book: Cont	tents <
ocument Edit Create View Show	Sort
<u>Jame</u>	Page
Current Products	2
hventory	
Standard Order Form	
New Product Draft	
Froposed New Products	
Disks	
Sues&Prod	
P S. Jesé Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Siles&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod Ive V. T. J.
Siles&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Jame Health Food Pkg	Sales&Prod Ixpe MiniText
S les&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Jame Health Food Pkg Leads Master Plus	Sales&Prod Type MiniText Dir
S les&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show dame Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg R they Bedgete	Sales&Prod Type MiniText Dir MiniText
S Jes&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Jame Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg New Products Natekook	Sales&Prod Type MiniText Dir MiniText Section
S les&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show dame Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg Notebook Sales Reports	Sales&Prod Type MiniText Dir MiniText Section Notebook
<ul> <li>S les&amp;Prod</li> <li>Volume Edit View Sort Show</li> <li>Jame</li> <li>Health Food Pkg</li> <li>Leads</li> <li>Modern Pkg</li> <li>New Products</li> <li>Notebook</li> <li>Sales Reports</li> </ul>	Sales&Prod Ixpe MiniText Dir MiniText Section Notebook Dir
S les&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show dame Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg New Products Notebook Sales Reports	Sales&Prod Type MiniText Dir MiniText Section Notebook Dir

To copy a document to a floppy disk:

- 2 Tap y the Disks icon on the Bookshelf.

The Disk Manager floats on the page.

**3** Tap **)** the icon for the connected disk to see what's on the disk.

- 4 From the Notebook Table of Contents, tap press . the document or section you want to copy, and then drag it where you want it to go on the Disk Manager table of contents.
- **5** Tap **)** the close corner when you're done.

# Using The Disk Manager

Whenever the PenPoint computer is connected to a disk, you can display a Disk Manager to find out what's on that disk.

You'll usually open the Disk Manager from the Bookshelf by tapping the Disks icon. (The Disk Manager is also in Tools.)

You'll see an icon for each type of connected disk drive at the top of the Disk Manager. For example, if you have both a floppy and hard disk drive connected to the PenPoint computer, you'll see the icon and the name of each drive.

For information about getting files to or from a PC on a network, see *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

#### USING THE DISK MANAGER

5

6

Sales&Prod

Type

Dir

Dir

File

MiniText

MiniText

Section

Notebook

MiniText

File -

Installer In

yod nata

Proposed New Products

New Pro

ã

ldea.s

29.65

New Bottle Design



Proposed New Products

Health Food Pkg

C

C _{Name}

2

B

C

ß

?

Sales&Piod

Leads

Modern Pkg

Notebook

*

**New Products** 

Sales Reports

DistSale.txt

Sales by Region

Weekly Report.RTF

5

R

Preterences Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard

New Product Ideas

Volume Edit View Sort Show

Disks

- Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive. (If a disk you insert in a floppy drive displays the automatic installation dialog, tap .) Close to dismiss it.)
- 2 Tap → the Disks icon on the Bookshelf to float the Disk Manager.
- **3** Tap **)** the disk icon to open the disk and see what's on it; tap it again to close it.
  - ▲ Flick up l on the page to scroll the Disk Manager's table of contents.

Directories organize information on a disk. They may contain PenPoint documents and sections as well as PC files and subdirectories.

- ▲ Document created on a PenPoint computer.
- ▲ Document created on a PC.
- Document created on a PenPoint computer but exported in a PC file format.
- 4 To see the contents of another floppy disk, draw a cross out χ over the disk icon to eject the disk and insert another floppy disk.
- **5** Tap **)** the close corner when you're done.

If you connect to another disk drive while working with the Disk Manager or reconnect to a volume on a network and you don't see the volume's icon, choose **Refresh** from the View menu to display it.



#### USING THE DISK MANAGER

When you copy or move a PenPoint section to a disk, PenPoint treats it as a unit, not as separate documents. When it's on a disk, you can't expand the section or move the contents around within it as you can on the Notebook Table of Contents. To see the documents contained in the section, move it back to the Notebook.

You can eject a disk by drawing a cross out  $\chi$  on the disk icon (or by choosing Eject & Forget). When you do so, PenPoint closes the icon and ejects the disk. If you want to copy documents from that floppy to another, draw the letter E on the icon (or choose Eject & Remember). PenPoint ejects the disk but remembers what's on it so you can copy the contents to another disk. To close the disk icon without copying anything at all, tap it.

Here's a shortcut for ejecting a disk: draw the letter  $\mathbf{E}$  on the Disks icon on the Bookshelf. You can do this even if the Disk Manager is closed.

### Finding Out More About What's on a Disk

The Disk Manager menus are similar to the Table of Contents menus. Commands on the View, Sort, and Show menus give you more information about a document, such as its size, the type of application used to create it, and the date on which you last changed it. You can use these commands, for example, to see which is the most recent version of a document you've stored on a disk.

cument Edit (	Create View Sh	now Sort		
ame Current Produ	cts			Page 2
	Diska			
Sales&Piod				
Volume Edit V	'iew Sort Show	<i>i</i>	Sales&f	'nod
Name			Туре	
Health Food	Pkg		MiniText	
			Dir	
Modern Pkg			MiniText	
U New Produc	:ts		Section	
	<b></b>		Notebook	
	113		Dii	
	About Sales&F	'rod 🕨 Volu	me	
	Name:	Sales&Prod		
Bottle Design	Total Space:	1,457,664		.19
Revised Bottle	Free Space:	1,411,072		.20
CONTRACT	Read Only:	No		21
A STATE OF THE STA				22
] New Product [	and the second se	and the second second	and the second	

Use the Show menu to display the Size or Date on which a document or section was last modified.

Use the Sort menu to sort the contents by Name, Date, Size, or Type from the Sort menu.

**Expand** or **Collapse** the contents of a directory from the View menu.

To find out the total space on a disk and the amount of space remaining, draw a check  $\checkmark$  on the disk icon.

▲ If the Volume sheet isn't displayed, tap → the arrow on the title line to see the list of option sheets and tap Volume.

The Volume sheet also tells you whether the disk is **Read Only**; that is whether you can copy or move information onto the disk (if you can, **Read Only** will be **No**).

The position of the tab on the upper right side of the disk determines whether a disk is read only. If the tab blocks the hole, the disk is read only. Push it down to copy or move information to the disk.

Just as you can choose an icon style for Bookshelf icons, you can choose an icon style for disk icons from the Icon option sheet. (Draw a check  $\checkmark$  on the icon. If the Icon option sheet isn't displayed, tap the arrow on the title line to see the list of option sheets and tap Icon. Tap to choose an icon style.)

USING THE DISK MANAGER

# Creating New Directories

Heal       Rename       MiniText       Y         Create Directory       Dir       Dir         Mode       Copy       MiniText       Y         New       Delete       Section       Notebook         Notebook       Notebook       Dir	olume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Lead     Create Diffectory     Dir       Mode     Copy     MiniText       New     Delete     Section       Notebook     Notebook     Notebook       Sales Reports     Dir	Heal Rename	MiniText ^약
Mode     Copy     MiniText       Image: Notebook     Section       Image: Notebook     Notebook       Image: Section     Section		Dir
New         Delete         Section           Notebook         Notebook         Notebook           Sales Reports         Dir	Mode Copy	MiniText
Notebook Notebook	I New Delete	Section
Sales Reports Dir	Notebook	Notebook
	] Sales Reports	Dir
	and have dealers being and states	

You can organize the contents of a disk by creating a directory and then moving PenPoint sections, and documents, as well as PC files, into it.

- Tap y the Disks icon on the Bookshelf to float the Disk Manager. Tap the icon for the connected disk to see what's on the disk.
- **2** Choose **Create Directory** from the Edit menu.

SalesåProd	
Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Name.	Type
C director	Dir
Leads     Modern Pkg	MiniText Dir MiniText
D Notabask	Netabook
Sales Reports	Dir

- **3** Double tap **:** to open the directory.
- 4 Move a document into the directory by pressing root on the document title and then dragging it so that the pen point is aligned with the Empty placeholder document.

The Disk Manager is preset to list titles alphabetically, so the new directory is placed under the d's. You can rename it in the usual way.

### Renaming a Disk and its Documents

You can rename the label for the entire disk by drawing a circle  $\circ$  on the icon and changing it in the edit pad or by choosing **About** from the Volume menu and writing in a new name of up to 11 characters. To rename a document or directory, draw a  $\circ$  on the title and change it in the edit pad or choose the **Rename** command from the Edit menu.

To review the procedures for renaming a document see chapter 5, Creating and Using Documents and "Editing Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text).

# Deleting Documents from the Disk Manager

To delete a document from a disk, draw a cross out  $\chi$  through the title, or select the title and choose **Delete** from the Edit menu. You'll see a confirmation message.

### Creating Disk Manager Stationery

If you often connect the PenPoint computer to several disks, for example to a PC on a network, you may find it more convenient to create Disk Manager stationery that's preset for the disk you use most often.

You create Disk Manager stationery by copying the Disk Manager into the stationery notebook. If you want, you can add it to the Create menu by tapping its Menu box in the stationery notebook. You can then create a new document in the usual way by drawing a caret  $\wedge$  in the table of contents where you want the stationery to go, and selecting a piece of Disk Manager stationery from the Create menu.

You work with the Disk Manager document as you would any document. That is, you can float it, move it to a different location in the Notebook, and attach a tab to it.

# Transferring Documents

### Transferring Documents and Sections to and from the Notebook

You transfer documents and sections from the PenPoint computer to a PenPoint or PC disk by copying or moving them from the Notebook to the disk's table of contents as shown on the Disk Manager.

Transfer documents to disk to make backup copies, free up more room on the PenPoint computer, and keep the notebook up-to-date. If you want to continue working on a document on another computer, you need to export it in the appropriate file format. See "Converting a PenPoint Document to a PC Format" in this chapter. You can copy all of the contents of a PC directory to the PenPoint computer, but not the directory itself.

ame.	Page
Current Products	
Inventory	
Standard Order Form	
Proposed New Products	5
New Product Ideas	
Capers.	
fales	9
Contraction of the second s	10
Sales by Region	1U .
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Region Disks Edit View Sort Show	11 11 Color 2 Pard
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Us&Prod Use Edit View Sort Show	11 Sales&Prod
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Ski Prod Urme Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Skew Skew Skew Skew Disks D	Sales&Prod
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Saferod ume Edit View Sort Show Girectory Health Food Pkg	Sales&Prod Type Dir MiniText
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Us&Prod Ume Edit View Sort Show Ume directory Health Food Pkg Leads	11 Sales&Prod Ivpe Dir MiniText Dir
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Us&Prod Ume Edit View Sort Show Ume directory Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg	11 Sales&Prod Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Us&Prod Ume Edit View Sort Show Ime directory Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg New Products	11 Sales&Prod Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText Section
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Us&Prod Ume Edit View Sort Show Ume directory Health Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg New Products Notebook	Ti Sales&Prod Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText Section Notebook
Sales by Region New Hires Disks Us&Prod Use Edit View Sort Show Use Edit View Sort Show Use Edit Food Pkg Leads Modern Pkg New Products Notebook Sales Reports	Ti Sales&Prod Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText Section Notebook Dir

To copy a document or section to a disk:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- 2 Tap → the Disks icon on the Bookshelf to float the Disk Manager.
- **3** Tap **)** the icon for the connected disk to see what's on it.
- 4 From the Notebook Table of Contents, tap press 
  → the title of the document or section you want to copy, and then drag it where you want it to go on the Disk Manager table of contents.
- **5** Tap **)** the close corner when you're done.

224

#### TRANSFERRING DOCUMENTS

If you already have a copy of the document on a disk, PenPoint gives it the same name and adds a number, for example Document 1. To delete the previous version, draw a cross out  $\chi$  on its title.

Most of the time you'll want to see what's on a disk before you copy or move a document to it, so you can see where to put the document. However, you can transfer a document to a disk even when the icon is closed. When you open the icon later, you'll see the document listed alphabetically with the other contents on disk.

To copy a document or section to the Notebook, reverse the procedure for copying to a disk. If you're copying a file from another computer, Penpoint displays the Import sheet. You choose an application from it to use the document on the PenPoint computer. TRANSFERRING DOCUMENTS

### Transferring Documents Between Disks

You can use the Disk Manager to transfer documents between disks. You might do this to consolidate all the client documents stored on various floppy disks to one disk, or to make a copy of a document you keep on your hard disk.

Notebook; Content	s <1	15
Document Edit Create View Show S	Sort	
Name	Page	
🖹 Read Me First		
First Experience		
Samples		
New Product Ideas		
🗋 Package Design Letter		
Disks		
Sales Sales Reps		
Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales	
	Dir	Ŷ
B Regsales	Dìr	
	Dir	
MthBot BTF	File	
CANYER ARTE	File	
		н.
Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales Reps	
Name	Type	Ŷ
D Fegion 1	Dir	0
E legion 2	Dir	
🗋 Joanne Peterson	MiniText	
Mark Lee	MiniText	the second
		1-1-5
? ✔ 貼 函 →	≝. De ∔ 1	
?  I I I II	🚔 🌗 🛃 🛔	ut.

To copy a document from a hard disk to a floppy disk:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to both floppy and hard disk drives, and insert a floppy disk.
- 2 Tap → the Disks icon on the Bookshelf to open the Disk Manager.
- **3** Tap **)** the icon for each connected disk.
- **4** Tap press **)** then drag the document to its destination.

#### TRANSFERRING DOCUMENTS

Sometimes the document you want to transfer to a floppy disk is stored on another floppy disk. Since you're using a single disk drive, you'll need to eject the first disk and insert the second to transfer the information.

olume Edit View	Sort Show	Sales&Prod
lose		Туре. î
bout	A West State of the State of th	Dir
Copy Contents	kg	MiniText
iect & Bememher		Dir
Eject & Forget	neessa anna a' th' Shirpé an a' th' Shirpé anna a' th' Bara	MiniText
Format		Section
S Notebook		Notebook
] Sales		Section
Sales Reports		Dir

Sales

To transfer a document from one floppy to another:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive and tap y the Disks icon to open the Disk Manager.
- **3** Tap **)** the floppy disk icon to open it.
- 4 Choose Eject & Remember from the Volume menu (or draw the letter E on the icon to eject the disk).

**5** Insert a second floppy disk.

sed New Products New Product Ideas Sales Customers New Bottle Design

9

- 6 Tap y the icon to see its contents.
- Copy or move the document from one disk to the other in the usual way. (PenPoint prompts you to reinsert the disk. Continue swapping disks until PenPoint completes copying the data.)

Volume Edit View Sort Show	Seles AP	42
Name	<u>Type</u>	ע* ן
	Dir	
Health Food Pkg	MiniText	
	Dir	
🗅 Modeta Pkg	MiniText	
V New Products	Section	Ý
Volunie Edit View Sort Show	Sales Re	ps
Name	Type,	í
Begion 1	Dir	
Begion 2	Dir	
1		
- Contraction of the Contraction		
		ļ,

Disks

# Copying and Duplicating Disks

The Volume menu has two commands that let you copy the contents of one disk to another disk.

Choose the **Duplicate** command to make an exact copy of a floppy disk onto another floppy. If you duplicate a disk onto an unformatted disk, PenPoint automatically formats the disk.

Choose the **Copy Contents** command to copy the entire contents of a disk to a location on another disk. When you do this, PenPoint creates a directory on the second or target disk with the same name as the disk you're copying and places the contents in it. You might choose this command, for example, if you wanted to back up the contents of your sales reports disk to your hard disk.

ume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
ose	<u>Type</u> î
out	Dir
py Contents Pkg	MiniText
ot & Bemember	Dir
ect & Forget	MiniText
rmat	Section
Notebook	Notebook
Sales	Section
Sales Reports	Dir

To duplicate a floppy disk:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- **2** Tap **)** the Disks icon to float the Disk Manager.
- **3** Tap **)** the floppy disk icon to open it.
- 4 Choose Duplicate from the Volume menu.

PenPoint begins to duplicate the disk and shows you the amount it's copied.

Note from PenPoint... Duplicating: 26% complete. Insert destination disk Cancel Insert a second floppy disk when PenPoint prompts you for the destination disk. (If the disk is unformatted PenPoint formats it.)

Insert the first floppy disk when PenPoint prompts you for the source disk.

**5** Continue swapping disks until the percent completed is 100% and the message is no longer on the screen.

#### FILING DOCUMENTS COPYING AND DUPLICATING DISKS

Disks	
Sales SalesåProd olume Epit View Sort Show	Sales
Name	Туре
District Sales Dict.	MiniText
	Dir
Bepsales	Dir
Beports	Dir
MthRpt.RTF	File
	File

To copy the entire contents of a floppy disk to a directory on a hard disk:

- 1 Connect the PenPoint computer to both a floppy and a hard disk drive, and insert a floppy disk.
- 2 Tap → the Disks icon to float the Disk Manager. Tap → the hard disk icon to open it.
- **3** Tap press **)** the floppy disk icon until you see the double marquee.
- **4** Drag the disk icon to its destination on the hard disk.

(If you're dragging it into a directory, lift the pen when the disk icon is aligned with other documents within the directory.)

You can also copy the contents of a disk by choosing **Copy Contents** from the Volume menu, and then dragging the disk icon to another volume or directory on the Disk Manager.

# Converting a PenPoint Document to a PC Format

**P**enPoint stores your documents in the PenPoint format. To work with a PenPoint document on a different computer, you need to convert the document from a PenPoint file format to one that is compatible with the application that you'll be using. Consult the manual that comes with your PC application if you're not sure what file formats the PC application accepts.

You copy a document to disk with a different file format by exporting it.

Move	
Ame Copy	<u>Page</u>
Current Delete	
Star Rename form	
Proposed New Products	
Mew Product Ideas	
Capers	7
Chili Mixes	
Disks	and the second
	A Sector Property and the
alexiend	
/olume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Name	<u>Type</u>
	Dir
Health Food Pkg	MiniText
	Dir
🖞 Modern Pkg	MiniText
I New Products	Section
🔲 Notebook	Notebook
Sales Reports	Dir
	The second second second

To export a document:

- **1** Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- **2** Tap **)** the Disks icon to float the Disk Manager and tap to open the icon for the connected disk.
- **3** Select a document from the Table of Contents.
- 4 From the Table of Contents, choose **Export** from the Edit menu.

You'll see the title of the document you've selected surrounded by the double marquee which tells you it's ready to be copied.

#### CONVERTING A PENPOINT DOCUMENT TO A PC FORMAT

nois poor, coments		× 1			
cument Edit Creat	e View	Show	Sort		enne button gerikk
ame					<u>Page</u>
Current Products		الدوم مع ماليا م			2
Inventory					3
3 Standard Order	Form				. 4
Pronosed New Pro	ducts	······		·····	. 5
🗋 New Product Ide	eas				. 6
		۰ جمعیت ۲۰۰۰ برمانی در در د	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		7
🕒 Chili Mixes	دېزىردىنىيىد ئىللىرىيى		بينجمعين	<u>، بالمحمد ويتر بالمحمد المحمد الم</u>	. 8
alesa rod	UIS	3 <b>KS</b>			
alesă rod olunie: Edit View	Dis Sort Sh	sks ow		Sales&I	Prod
alesă rod olunie Edit View Name	Dis Sort Sh	sks ow		Sales&I	
alesă pod olunie Edit View Vane Digirectory	Bort Sh	sks OW		Sales&I Type Dir	Prod
ales & rod olume Edit View Name Dicirectory Di Health Food F	Dis Sort Sh ² hg	5K8.		Sales&I Type Dir MiniText	
alesă rod olun e Edit View Nanz D directory D Health Food F D Leads	Dis Sort Sh			Sales&I Type Dir MiniText Dir	
alesă rod olurre Edit View Name Girectory Health Food F Geads Modern Pkg	Sort Sh	9K8		Sales&I Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText	
alesă nod olurre Edit View Vane Cirectory E Health Food F Leads Modern Pkg New Products	Dis Sort Sh			Sales&I Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText Section	
ales& nod olume Edit View Name directory Heslth Food F Leads Modern Pkg New Products Notebook	Dis Sort Sh			Sales&I Type Dir MiniText Dir MiniText Section Noteboo	

**5** Drag the document to its destination.

If you're dragging it into a directory, lift the pen when the marquee is aligned with other documents in the directory.

When you lift the pen, PenPoint displays the Export dialog sheet.

- NEWPROD.RTF

   OK

   OK

   Clear

   Cancel

   Export

   Document:

   New Product Ideas

   Export Name:

   ASCII File

   Soft Line Break ASCII File

   RTF File

   Export

   Cancel
- 6 To rename the document, tap y the title to change it in the edit pad.
  - ▲ Or, draw a X through the title and write in a new name.
- 7 Tap y to select a file format.
- 8 Tap **y** Export to export the document

PenPoint transfers the document to disk, lists it alphabetically, and closes the Export sheet.

▲ Tap → Cancel to close the Export sheet without exporting the document.

Refer to "Editing Text in Fields" in chapter 7 (Editing and Formatting Text) to learn more about editing document names in fields.

#### 232 CONVERTING A PENPOINT DOCUMENT TO A PC FORMAT

In your Notebook you can have a document title that includes several words with spaces between them. On many PCs, however, the convention for naming documents requires titles of 8 characters followed by a period and 3-letter extension to identify the file format, for example NewProd.RTF.

If you don't shorten a long title and give it a file format extension, the PC may truncate it when you export it and the application you're using may not recognize it as a file.

For example, if you export a document called New Bottle Design in ASCII format, when you look at the document on your PC directory, you'll see a document entitled New_Bott with no file format extension. To avoid this, rename a document with a meaningful name followed by an appropriate 3-letter extension for the file format.

# Converting a PC Document to a PenPoint Document

**S**ometimes you'll want to work on documents originally created on the PC. For example, you might wish to add details to a sales plan prepared by a colleague. Or, you might decide to work further on a document you'd already exported to the PC.

You transfer documents back to your Notebook by copying or moving them from a disk to the Notebook. If you're copying a PC file or a document you previously exported, PenPoint automatically displays the Import sheet. You can then choose an application to use with it.

Jame	Pana
Current Products	2
	3
Standard Order Form	4
Proposed New Products	5
New Product Ideas	
	7
Chili Mixes	
] Sales	9
Sales by Region	
Disks	
3ales8Prod	
Sales&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Sales&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Di <b>Leads</b> Di Marlem Pko	Sales&Prod Dir fr MiniText
Sales&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Di <b>Leads</b> Di Modern Pkg Di New Pandauts	Sales&Prod Dir [†] MiniText Section
Sales&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Leads Modern Pkg I New Products Notebook	Sales&Prod Dir Ŷ MiniText Section Notebook
Sales Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Leads Modern Pkg <b>New Products</b> Notebook Notebook	Sales&Prod Dir ∲ MiniText Section Notebook Dir
Bales&Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Lects Modern Pkg New Products Notebook Sales Reports DistSele tot	Sales&Prod Dir ¹¹ MiniText Section Notebook Dir File
Bales Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Leads Modern Pkg <b>New Products</b> Notebook Sales Reports DistSale txt DistSale txt DistSale ty Region	Sales&Prod Dir ^{fr} MiniText Section Notebook Dir File MiniText
Bales Prod Volume Edit View Sort Show Leads Modern Pkg New Products Notebook Sales Reports Sales by Region Sales by Region Weekly Report RTF	Sales&Prod Dir [†] MiniText Section Notebook Dir File MiniText File

- **1** Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- 2 Tap ) the Disks icon to display the Disk Manager and tap to open the icon for the connected disk.

3 Tap press ≯ the document you wish to import, and then drag it to a location on the Table of Contents.

PenPoint displays the Import sheet.

#### USING PENPOINT

#### 234 CONVERTING A PC DOCUMENT TO A PENPOINT DOCUMENT



- 4 To change the document name, tap y the title to change it in the edit pad.
  - ▲ Or, draw a X through the title and write in a new name.
- **5** Tap **)** to select an application.
- **6** Tap **)** Import to import the document.

PenPoint copies the document to the Notebook and closes the Import sheet.

▲ Tap → Cancel to close the Import sheet without importing the document.

If you want to copy a file to the Notebook without converting it to a PenPoint format, choose **Placeholder** from the **Import to** options. You might do this, for example, to use the Notebook to transfer a file from one PC to another. If you turn to the document in the Notebook, PenPoint asks you which application to use with it.

# Formatting a Floppy Disk

**B**efore you can use a disk in the GO Floppy disk drive, you need to format it. The first time you put an unformatted disk into the GO floppy drive you'll see a message asking you to choose a disk size for formatting.



 Connect the PenPoint computer to a floppy disk drive and insert an unformatted disk into the drive.

You'll see a message informing you that the disk needs to be formatted.

**2** Choose a disk size.

(If you don't know what the size is, eject the disk and check the size that's written on the metal shutter).

If you've mistakenly inserted a disk with information on it you want to keep, tap **Cancel** to eject the disk.

- 3 Write in a name (up to 11 characters) for the disk (Or, tap → the field to display an edit pad and write it in the pad.)
- 4 Tap **)** Continue.

You'll see a message that shows you that the format is in progress.

When PenPoint finishes formatting the disk, the message disappears and if you have the Disk Manager open, the disk icon appears there.

You can also format a disk from the Disk Manager by choosing **Format** from the Volume menu. You might do this to format a disk to a lower density or to quickly erase its contents.

If you get a message telling you that the disk is a write protected volume, make sure you don't need the information on it. Then push up the tab covering the hole on the upper right side of the disk.

# Saving Documents

f you have to restart the computer while you're working with a document, you'll lose your most recent changes unless you have saved the document. PenPoint automatically saves your current changes each time you turn to another page of the Notebook.

If you have something selected in a document, PenPoint doesn't save your changes even when you turn the page. You can make sure the changes are saved by selecting something on the page you turn to, or by undoing the selection in the document you're turning away from.

To save your changes periodically without turning the page, choose **Checkpoint** from the Document menu.

Sometimes you'll make changes to a document that you don't want to keep. You can go back to an earlier version of the document by choosing **Revert** from the Document menu. When you do this, PenPoint restores the document to what it was the last time you saved it.

Package Design Letter	<17>
Document Edit Insert Case Format	
Checkpoint Revert Print Print Setup February 17,	oods î 11vd. 2036 1991
About FastPak Design 3535 Mission St. Houston TX 45321	
RE: New package design Dear Ms. Huerta:	
We need a new design for the plastic bottles for our condiments.	
Recently, an executive of a supermarket chain took a of our samples home in order to try them before order our line. He briefly left the box on the kitchen floor w his son ran into it with a tricycle.	box ting /here
Our bottles should be able to withstand the impact fro tricycle powered by a three year old. But four bottles our new salsa broke, spilling their contents all over th floor.	ma of e
The executive never got a chance to try our product.	
Can you design a lightweight, recyclable, 8 oz. plasti- bottle that won't break under moderate impact? I'll be travelling next week, but you can fax me suggested proposals at 415/ 345-9833.	c
2 🖌 🛅 🗍 式 🔬 🗍 Help Pieferences Tools Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer II	n Out

To save your current changes while working on a document, choose **Checkpoint** from the Document menu.

To restore an earlier version, choose **Revert** from the Document menu.

# Backing Up Your Notebook

As with any computer, it's advisable to back up your Notebook periodically by copying it to a disk. Then if you have an error that causes you to lose data, you can restore your Notebook to its original configuration.

To find out how much space the Notebook will occupy on the disk, choose **About** from the Table of Contents' Document menu and check the **Filed Size**.



To back up the Notebook:

- 1 Tap → the Disks icon to open the Disk Manager.
- 2 Tap y to open the icon for the disk to which you want to copy the Notebook.
- **3** Drag the bottom handle of the page up to see the Notebook icon.

Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales
Name	<u>Type</u>
District Sales Dict.	MiniText
	Dir
B Regsales	Dir
B Reports	Dir
MthBpt.BTF	File
	File

- 4 Tap press . the Notebook icon until you see the double marquee, which tells you it's ready to be copied.
- **5** Drag the Notebook icon to the disk.

Once you've copied a notebook to a disk, PenPoint treats it as if it were a section. You can't open it unless you move or copy it back to the Notebook.

If you have turned on **Zooming Documents** on the Safeguards Preferences sheet, you can close the Notebook by tapping the close corner and then drag the Notebook icon to a location on the Disk Manager.

#### BACKING UP YOUR NOTEBOOK

### Restoring Your Notebook

When you have an error that causes you to boot the computer, PenPoint installs the default Notebook. If you've backed up your Notebook, you can copy it to the computer and delete the default Notebook. (Booting the computer is covered in chapter 12, Learning More About PenPoint.)

Note book: Contents	(1)
Document Edit Create View Show Sort	
Name	Page.
🖹 Read Me First	
First Experience	
Samples	
🖹 New Product Ideas	
Package Design Letter	

Volume Edit View Sort Show	Sales&Prod
Name.	Type.
	Dir
Leads	Dir
🖞 Modern Pkg	MiniText
IR New Broducts	Section
L Notebook	Notebook
Sales Reports	Dir

To restore your Notebook after booting the computer:

- **1** Connect the PenPoint computer to a disk drive.
- 2 Tap y the default Notebook's close corner.
  - ▲ If you don't see a close corner, tap Allowed for the Zooming Documents category on the Safeguards Preferences sheet.
- 3 Tap → Disks to open the Disk Manager and tap → the icon for the connected disk to open it.
- 4 Tap press 
   the title of the Notebook you want to copy and drag it to the Bookshelf.

#### FILING DOCUMENTS BACKING UP YOUR NOTEBOOK

- Notebook 1: Contents  $\langle 1 \rangle$ Contents Document Edit Create View Show Sort Page. Name Current Products 2 Current Inventory 3 Products Proposed New Products Sales Proposed New Products 5 New Product Ideas 6 Capers 7 Chili Mixes 8 
   Sales
   9

   Sales by Region
   10
   New Hires
   11
   Customers
   12 Complaints to Acton 14 Customers 
   New Bottle Design
   15

   ¹⁵

   Salsa/Condiments
   16
   Bottle Design Revised Bottle FAX..... .20 Notebook Notebook 1 L In Glock. đ ? 勖 1 Stationery Disks Keyboard Installer Gut Tools
- 5 Tap y the Notebook icon to open it. Draw a flick up l on the title line to zoom the Notebook so that it fills the screen.
- 6 If you won't be using it, you can delete the default Notebook by drawing a cross out χ over it.

If you're sharing your computer you might have several notebooks in it at the same time—one for each person. To learn how to create multiple notebooks, read "Accommodating Multiple Users" in chapter 12 (Learning More About PenPoint).

#### CHAPTER 12

# Learning More About PenPoint

## Managing Memory

As you install applications and services in your Notebook and create more documents, you may reach a point where you are using most of the memory in your computer. Before you run out of memory, you'll see a message advising you to save your current work and make more room in the Notebook. To work with the memory in your computer most effectively:

- Delete documents you're no longer using.
- Deactivate applications, services, and handwriting profiles you're not currently using and deactivate or delete items on the Bookshelf.

### Finding Out How Much Memory Something Uses

The items in the Notebook use different amounts of memory. Before deleting or deactivating something, you might check to see how much room it occupies.

To find out which items you've installed in the Notebook take up the most room, check the size in the Installer. To do so:

- Tap the Installer icon to open the Installer. You'll see a column for the size on each sheet of the Installer.
- To see a different sheet, tap the arrow on the title line and tap the name of the sheet you want to see.

To find out the size (in kilobytes) of a document you have stored on a disk choose Size from the Show menu. You can sort the titles by size choosing Size from the Table of Content's Sort menu.

To see how much memory you have available in the Notebook, look at the Memory Usage Preferences sheet. To do so, tap ightharpoondow Preferences on the Bookshelf and tap the arrow on the title line to see the list of sheets. Then tap Memory Usage. To have enough memory for standard operations, make sure you have at least 500K free.

MANAGING MEMORY

### Things You Can Safely Delete or Deactivate

The most efficient way to use the memory in your computer is to deactivate applications, handwriting profiles, and services you're not using. Deactivating them is a way of temporarily removing them; they're easy to reactivate.

When you deactivate something, the PenPoint[™] operating system deletes it from the computer but leaves a placeholder for it. Since PenPoint remembers the home volume, you can reactivate it in one step. To deactivate and reactivate something, use the Installer. (See chapter 4, Installing Programs and Devices for details.)

Periodically, you can gain more room in the computer by deleting documents or sections you're no longer using. Before doing so, you might make a backup copy on a disk so that you can work with the documents at a later time. (See chapter 11, Filing Documents for information on transferring documents to and from the computer.)

To make more room in the Notebook, you can also delete items on the Bookshelf. For example, you can delete Help, which removes both Quick Help and the Help notebook, and copies of tools, such as Disks, the Keyboard, and the Clock. There are some Bookshelf items you can't delete: the contents of Tools, the Installer, the In and Out boxes, and the Stationery notebook.

### Other Ways to Use Memory Efficiently

If you've set the Access Speed to Accelerated on the Access document option sheet, you can turn to the document more quickly. But this option takes more memory than using the standard page turn speed. If you're low on memory, turn off this option.

Some operations fragment memory. That is, PenPoint saves the information in smaller blocks distributed over a greater area than if it were in one continuous block. Thus PenPoint may sometimes not have enough contiguous memory to perform a task. If you get an out of memory warning, save your current changes by choosing **Checkpoint** from the Document menu and restart (warm boot) the computer as explained in the next section.
MANAGING MEMORY

## When You Get an Out of Memory Message

When PenPoint displays an out of memory message, restart (warm boot) the computer. Then you can free more memory by deactivating applications and services you're not using.

To restart:

- Before restarting the computer, choose Checkpoint from the Document menu to save your current changes.
- Turn off the computer by pressing the Off button.
- To restart it, press the On button. Hold it down for a few seconds before releasing it.
- When you release the button, you'll see a message telling you that PenPoint is warm booting the computer.
- When the warm boot is completed, the message disappears and you'll see the Table of Contents.

## Restarting PenPoint When a Document Freezes

If you're working with a document or tool and you find you can't continue working with it, the document may have frozen. You can still use other documents you created with the same application. However, you may have to take some steps to continue working with this one.

When the document freezes:

- Turn to the Table of Contents.
- Turn back to the document. You should be able to use it, but you may have lost changes you made since you last saved it. (It's a good idea to save your changes periodically by choosing Checkpoint from the Document menu or by turning the page.)
- If you turn back to the document and you still can't use it, PenPoint displays a message telling you that an error has occurred and then automatically turns to the Table of Contents.
- Restart the computer. (Press the On/Off button at the top right corner of the computer. Hold the button down for a few seconds and then release it. You'll see a message telling you that PenPoint is warm booting.)

If you're unable to use the document after restarting the computer, duplicate the document by copying it on the Table of Contents and then try using the copy. If that doesn't work, go back to a copy you've stored on a disk, or use a document recovery utility.

# Booting PenPoint When PenPoint Freezes

f the screen goes blank or you find you can't do anything in the Notebook, then PenPoint may have frozen. First try restarting the computer. If you're still unable to use the Notebook, you'll need to copy the PenPoint operating system from a GO floppy disk or hard disk. (This is called **booting** or **cold booting** the computer.)

To boot the computer:

- Connect your computer to a GO floppy disk. (See chapter 13, Setting Up Your Computer to learn how to connect it).
- **2** Turn on the computer.
- **3** Put the first PenPoint disk into the floppy drive.
- **4** Insert the end of a straightened paper clip into the hole that contains the reset button on the back of the computer.

You'll hear a beep and the computer will display a message showing the PenPoint copyright information.

PenPoint prompts you to insert the remaining disks.

When PenPoint has been successfully installed you'll see the Table of Contents.

When you copy PenPoint onto your computer, you'll see the default Notebook. To customize it, reinstall the applications and accessories you normally use, your handwriting profile and any preferences or personal dictionaries you've stored on a disk. You'll also need to copy the documents and sections you were last using back to your Notebook.



# Accommodating Multiple Users

When several people share the same computer, each person may want to set it up differently. You can do this by:

- Creating an individual Notebook for each user.
- Creating an individual handwriting profile, personal dictionary, and preference set as described in chapter 4, Installing Programs and Devices.

Before beginning to work, each person can copy her or his Notebook to the computer from a disk and then activate a handwriting profile, personal dictionary, and preference set.

#### Creating Individual Notebooks

Even when you don't share the computer with several other people, you may find it more convenient to organize your work by creating individual notebooks for each primary topic, for example for each major client or project.

The PenPoint computer comes with a default Notebook which you can replace with another notebook. The default Notebook and any additional notebooks you create are kept on the Bookshelf.



To create a Notebook:

- Draw a caret ∧ on the Bookshelf where you want the new notebook to go.
- 2 Choose Notebook from the Create menu.

247

#### USING PENPOINT

#### ACCOMMODATING MULTIPLE USERS

	Note book, Contents	<1
Name Be Fir <b>Se</b>	ad Me First st Experience mples New Product Ideas Package Design Letter	2age 2 3 4 5 6
	Notebook Contents <1> Document Edit Create View Show Sort Name Page	
	Empty	Contents
		L.
2 74 ?	L Notebook Notebook 1	

- **3** Tap to open the notebook.
- **4** To close the default Notebook, tap the close corner. To remove it, move it to a disk using the Disk Manager.

(You need to choose the **Document Zooming** option on the Safeguards Preferences sheet before you can close the current Notebook.)

- 5 To zoom the new Notebook to its full size, draw a flick up l. (Draw a flick down to unzoom it.)
  - ▲ To close it, tap ▶ the close corner

You treat the new Notebook as you do other items on the Bookshelf. To:

- Open it, tap its icon.
- Move it, press ≯ the icon, then drag it. To copy it, tap press ≯ the icon, then drag it.
- Set the icon options, draw a check  $\checkmark$  on the icon.
- Change the title, draw a circle o on the title to get the edit pad, and change it there.

Once you've created a Notebook, you can keep a backup copy on a disk. Use the Disk Manager to copy it to a floppy or hard disk. See chapter 11, Filing Documents for information about the Disk Manager.

# Tips on Navigating and Using Documents

Most of the time when you navigate from one place to another in the Notebook, you use the Table of Contents, tabs, or hyperlink buttons. While working on a document, you might refer to other information by embedding a second document or tool in the cork margin.

By combining these techniques for navigation and reference, you can make your work more efficient. For example, you can turn the Table of Contents into a control panel which contains embedded tools and documents or create a customized index that contains hyperlink buttons to documents.

#### Turning the Table of Contents into a Control Panel

The Table of Contents is the principal navigation tool in the Notebook, since from it you can turn to any page.

To make it easier to refer to the Table of Contents while working with other documents, you can float it and then resize and position it in a convenient location. Whenever you next float the Table of Contents, it will reappear in the same place on the screen. (To float it from anywhere in the Notebook, double tap .)

To turn it into a control panel, display the cork margin and embed hyperlink buttons, documents, and tools you routinely use while working on documents. 250

#### TIPS ON NAVIGATING AND USING DOCUMENTS

New Products Sales

1	New Product Ideas	<6>
Document E	dit Insert Case Format	
то:	Dick Hopkins	Ŷ
FROM:	Enrique Fabbro	ŝ
DATE:	February 2, 1991	
SUBJECT:	New Product Ideas	
CC:	Test Kitchens, Sara Schwartz	iem -
Dick I was fiddlir	ig around with some of my mother's old	od out

recipes the other day and I came up with several ways we might try to market eggplant which is a good stable vegetable. It's cheap to grow and it survives well in cldo storage, and various preparations of it seem to hold up well on the shelf. I think these new products might be especially popular in the Southwest and in California where they're rediscovering vegetables. Let me know what you think. -- Enrique

Notebook: Contents		1	0.03
Document Edit Create View Show Sort			on
Name	Page	Ŷ	WP
Current Products	2	U	
Inventory			
Standard Order Form	4		,
Proposed New Products	5		
New Product Ideas			
Capers	7		
🗅 Chili Mixes	8		- A
Sales	9		
<b>FN</b>		4	In C

abaganoush that I think will stan nelf storage. It involves roasting an do in bulk) and then smashin	d up we the eggi g them v	It to long-term plants (which we vith garlic,
Notebook:Contents C	1	ive some
Name	Page i	top of the jar, re can find a
Current Products	. 2	o cour mild d
linventory	.3	
Standard Order Form	.4 \$	hg or Jochini and
Disks 1 (Sales by Region) 🕒 ToDo 10:12	2 A.M.	a D. L.

To turn the Table of Contents into a control panel:

 Double tap y the Contents tab to float the Table of Contents. (Make sure the floating preference is turned on.)

**2** Resize the Table of Contents by dragging the bottom or lower right hand corner. Position it by dragging the title line.

Each time you float the Table of Contents it will appear in the same place until you reposition or resize it.

To make it smaller, hide the menu line by drawing an M on the title line. (To display it when you need to choose a command, draw another M on the title line.)

**3** Draw a C on the title line to show the cork margin.

In the cork margin you can copy tools you want to use, create new documents or embed existing ones, and insert hyperlink buttons to other documents.

Instead of using gestures to display or hide the cork margin and menu line, you can also choose **Cork Margin** and **Menu Line** from the Show category on the Access document option sheet.

#### TIPS ON NAVIGATING AND USING DOCUMENTS

#### Creating a Customized Index

You can make an index by creating a document on the Bookshelf that contains hyperlink buttons to documents or places in documents to which you want to refer.

When working with the index, you can float it on top of the current document, or resize the document and the index so that the index is **tiled**—arranged next to the document on the screen.



Customers	
🖹 Chain Stores	13
Complaints to Act on	14
New Bottle Design	
🗎 Salsa/Condiments	16
🖹 Package Design Letter	17
Proposed New Design (3/2/91)	18
Bottle Design Sketch	
Revised Bottle FAX	
MiniText M	
Document Edit Insert Case Format	
L D Clock Notebook MiniText	
? ✓ ₺ ₼ ਜ਼ 端	Pr

To create a tiled index:

- **1** Drag the bottom handle of the current document up.
- 2 Create a document on the Bookshelf. (Draw a caret ∧ on the Bookshelf and tap y a piece of stationery.)

3 Tap y to open the new document, and resize it so it fits beneath the current document. (Reposition the document by dragging the title line. Drag the corner handle diagonally to make it bigger.)

> To create more space in the index for hyperlink buttons, hide the menu line by drawing an M on the title line. (To display it when you need to choose a command, draw another M on the title line.)

#### TIPS ON NAVIGATING AND USING DOCUMENTS

Customers	
Chain Stores	13
Complaints to Action	
🕅 New Bottle Design	
🗋 Salsa/Condiments	
🗅 Package Design Letter	
Proposed New Design (3/2/91)	
🕑 Bottle Design Sketch	19 R
Bevised Bottle FAX	
CONTRACT	
MiniText	
? ✓ 10 1 1	á ()• Ł Ł
Usia Durás munesa Tasta Chatiswaw, Diala Kau	these in the line in Out

**4** Select a document from the Table of Contents or turn to the document you want to place in the index and select a location in it.

5 Draw the hyperlink gesture ⊙ in the index.

As you add buttons to the index, you can rename or rearrange them so that the index works like a menu.

You can change the reference of a hyperlink button. In this way, you leave the button on the index, but reset the place to which it takes you. To reset the button, select a new location, and then triple tap *p* the button to redefine the link and to relabel the button with the new location.

#### CHAPTER 13

# Setting Up Your Computer

**T**his chapter contains information about connecting your GO Computer to various BaseStation modules, printers, and networks, and about caring for your computer. The diagrams show you how to make the physical connections to these devices. For information about how to use those connections once you've made them—how to print documents, install applications, and copy files to disk, see the appropriate chapters in this manual.

# Recharging the Battery

The battery will normally provide power for your GO Computer for four to five hours. If you use the battery to run a disk drive or other external device, you reduce that time.

When the battery needs recharging, the computer sends you a message. There are two ways to recharge your computer's battery:

- The GO Travel Charger recharges a battery in eight hours.
- The GO Quick Charger charges a battery in about one and a half hours, and lets you operate the computer with external devices while charging.

You may find it useful to buy a second battery, so you can always have one charged and ready.

#### Using the GO Travel Charger

You can connect the GO Travel Charger directly to the computer to:

- recharge the battery in eight hours
- operate the computer while conserving its battery power.

The Travel Charger operates on current from 100-240 volts, and from 50-60 cycles, so you won't need an adapter for the current in other countries. The Travel Charger starts charging when you plug it into the computer. If you interrupt the charging cycle by connecting a GO Floppy Drive or other device, you'll need to disconnect the drive or device, and remove and then reinsert the Travel Charger jack to start the charge cycle again.

For this procedure you'll need the GO Travel Charger and its detachable power cord, which come with every GO computer.



To use the Travel Charger to recharge the battery:

- Unplug the Quick Charger or anything else that's attached to your GO Computer. The Travel Charger only charges your battery when it's the only thing attached to the computer.
- 2 Plug the small end of the Travel Charger's cord into the Travel Charger jack on the top edge of the computer.
- **3** Plug the other end of the Travel Charger's cord into a standard wall outlet.

256

RECHARGING THE BATTERY

## Using the GO Quick Charger

The GO Quick Charger is an optional BaseStation module which you can use to:

- recharge the battery in one and a half hours
- power GO Computer and disk drive operations while recharging the battery
- connect to printers
- connect to a PC
- connect to a TOPS FlashCard
- connect to a disk drive
- attach a keyboard.

Like the GO Travel Charger, the Quick Charger operates on current from 100-200 volts, and from 50-60 cycles, so you shouldn't need an adapter for the current in other countries. As with the Travel Charger, you start a charge cycle when you plug the Quick Charger into the GO Computer. However, the Quick Charger will continue to charge the computer (at a much slower rate) even if you attach other devices.

For this procedure you'll need a GO Quick Charger and a BaseStation cable.



To recharge your GO Computer's battery with the Quick Charger:

- **1** Plug the Quick Charger into a standard wall outlet.
- **2** Plug the BaseStation cable into the BaseStation connector on the side of the Quick Charger and into the computer. Use either end of the cable; they're the same.

# Replacing the Battery

You may need to install a fresh battery pack if you:

- use your computer for long periods of time without access to an outlet for recharging
- use the battery in your computer to run a disk drive for any length of time
- see a message on the screen telling you your battery is low.

#### Removing a Battery

When you turn the computer over you'll see the rectangular outline of the battery pack.

Before you remove the battery pack, choose **Checkpoint** from the Document menu to save your work. Or you can turn the page. (The PenPointTM operating system records the data as long as nothing is selected on the page before you turn away from it.)



To remove the battery pack:

- **1** Turn the computer off. If you remove the battery while the computer is on, you may lose data.
- **2** Tip the computer up so that the battery pack is on top, facing you.
- **3** Use your thumbs to press the top edge of the battery pack (the bottom edge of the computer) down and towards you until it comes out.

258

A small lithium battery inside the computer keeps your data safe while you're changing the battery pack. Installing a Battery



With the computer turned face down, gently but firmly press the battery pack into its slot until it slips comfortably behind the retaining lip of the computer.

# Connecting to a Printer

**Y**ou can connect your GO Computer to a printer in the following ways:

- Use a GO Serial Printer Cable to connect directly to a serial printer.
- Use the GO Quick Charger and a standard serial cable to connect to a serial printer.
- Use a GO PC Cable—FlashCard to connect to a PC with a TOPS FlashCard and a connected printer. (For more information see "Connecting to a TOPS Network" later in this chapter and in *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.)

Consult the GO Release Notes for a list of supported printers. Your printer must be on this list, be compatible with one that is, or be supported with an appropriate printer driver by GO or an independent vendor.

Once you have a printer hooked up, you'll need to install it so that the PenPoint operating system will recognize it. For more information, see chapter 10 (Printing, Sending and Receiving Documents).

#### Connecting Directly to a Serial Printer

For this procedure you'll need a GO Serial Printer Cable. You may also need an adapter. See the list of adapters below.



To connect your computer directly to a serial printer:

- 1 Plug the GO Serial Printer Cable's nine-pin (male DB9) plug into the printer's serial connector.
  - ▲ If your printer has a female DB9 connector, you don't need an adapter. Otherwise you do.
- 2 Plug the other end of the serial cable into the BaseStation Connector on your computer.

260

## SETTING UP YOUR COMPUTER

CONNECTING TO A PRINTER

## Serial Printer Connectors And Adapters

If your printer has a female DB9 connector, you don't need an adapter for the GO Serial Printer Cable's male DB9 plug. If it has any other kind of connector, you need an adapter that has a DB9 connector on one end (for the GO cable) and the appropriate adapter on the other end.

Printer's Connector	Adapter Needed
Male DB9	DB9 female on both ends
Female DB9	Adapter Needed
Male DB25	DB9 female on one end, DB25 female on the other
Female DB25	DB9 female on one end, DB25 male on the other

CONNECTING TO A PRINTER

Connecting to a Serial Printer Through the GO Quick Charger

For this procedure you'll need a standard serial cable, a Quick Charger, and a BaseStation cable.



- 1 Plug a standard serial cable into the serial connector on the side of the Quick Charger.
- **2** Plug the other end of the serial cable into the serial connector of the printer.
- **3** Connect the Quick Charger to the computer with the BaseStation cable.
  - ▲ If you don't want to use the battery, you can plug the Quick Charger into a wall outlet.

You can also use the Quick Charger to connect to both serial and parallel printers via a TOPS network. See "Connecting to a TOPS Network" later in this chapter.

# Using a GO Floppy Drive

You use the GO Floppy Drive to transfer documents and applications to and from floppy disks. You can connect the drive to the GO Computer directly or through the Quick Charger. With the disk drive you can:

- install new applications
- store documents created on the GO Computer
- free up more memory by transferring applications or documents to a floppy disk
- exchange documents with colleagues.

Use the Installer to move applications to and from floppy disks, and the Disk Manager to move documents. For more details, see chapter 11, Filing Documents and chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices.

You can also connect to a floppy drive through a TOPS connection to a PC. For more information, see *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

Connecting a GO Floppy Drive through the GO Quick Charger

For this procedure you'll need a GO Quick Charger, a GO Floppy Drive, and a BaseStation cable.



To connect to a floppy drive through the Quick Charger:

- 1 Slip the latch on the front of the Floppy Drive into the connector on the Quick Charger.
- **2** Press the backs of the floppy drive and Quick Charger together. The units click into place when they're properly connected.
- **3** Plug the BaseStation cable into the computer's BaseStation connector and the BaseStation connector on the Quick Charger.

To separate the units, press the release button on top of the disk drive, then unhook the backs of the units and the latch at the front of the disk drive.

# USING A GO FLOPPY DRIVE

## Connecting Directly to a Disk Drive

You can connect the GO Floppy Drive directly to the GO Computer, but it will run down your battery rapidly, so it's advisable only for short periods. Remember that if you connect the floppy drive to the computer while you're charging it, you'll have to disconnect the drive, remove and then re-connect the Travel Charger or Quick Charger to start the charge cycle again.

For this procedure you'll need a GO Floppy Drive and a BaseStation Cable.



To make the direct connection:

- Push one end of the BaseStation Cable into the computer's BaseStation connector. Both ends of the cable are the same.
- **2** Push the other end of the cable into the floppy drive's BaseStation connector.

Caution: Make sure the disk drive is on a stable surface. If it tips over while it's running, it might damage the floppy disk.

# Using Floppy Disks

f you're unfamiliar with floppy disks, take a moment to examine one. The metal shutter goes into the drive first. The disk's label area creates an obvious front or top side. The GO Floppy Drive stands vertically, so make sure that the large label area is facing left when you slip the floppy disk into the disk drive slot.

The GO Floppy Drive uses 3.5 inch disks that hold 1.44 megabytes of information. These are compatible with the 3.5 inch disk drives of IBM-compatible computers. This means that IBM-compatible computers (using DOS) can read disks formatted by a GO computer or any PenPoint computer.

- A GO Computer or any computer using the PenPoint operating system can read 3.5 inch DOS-formatted floppy disks from PCs and perform basic file functions on them, such as copy, rename and transfer.
- You can work with data on compatible disks whenever the applications are compatible.

If the GO Computer doesn't recognize a disk, you'll see a message asking you whether to format or eject it. If the disk has some data on it that you want to keep, choose **Eject**, because formatting will erase everything.

For more about formatting and using disks, see chapter 11, Filing Documents and chapter 4, Installing Applications and Devices.

For this procedure you'll need a GO Floppy Drive connected to a GO Computer, either directly or through a Quick Charger, and a 3.5 inch floppy disk. In either case, you use the BaseStation cable to connect to the GO Computer.



To use floppy disks in a GO Floppy Drive:

- 1 Insert the floppy disk into the drive, metal shutter first, with the label facing the release button.
- **2** Push the disk into the drive until you hear it click into place.

The disk should go easily into the drive. If it doesn't, you've probably tried to insert it upside down.

265

USING FLOPPY DISKS

## Manually Ejecting a Disk from the GO Floppy Drive

You normally eject floppy disks from the GO Floppy Drive with the Disk Manager's **Eject** command, or by drawing an **E** over the disk icon. If that fails for some reason, you can eject a floppy disk manually.

Use a straightened paper clip to push the manual eject button (inside the hole) until the disk pops out.



# Using a Hard Drive

You can connect to a SCSI hard drive through the GO Floppy Drive. You can also connect to a hard drive through a TOPS connection to a PC. For more information, see *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

For this procedure you'll need a GO Floppy Drive and a SCSI-II to SCSI-I connector cable.



To connect a SCSI hard drive to your GO Computer:

- Use the SCSI-II to SCSI-I cable to connect the hard drive to the SCSI connector on the back of the GO Floppy Drive.
- **2** Connect the floppy drive to the computer with the BaseStation cable.

With most types of SCSI drives (generally older ones) you may need a small-to-large (SCSI-I to SCSI-II) adapter.

# Connecting to a PC

**Y**ou can connect your GO Computer to a PC equipped with a TOPS FlashCard to:

- exchange documents (files) with colleagues
- rename, move, copy, and delete documents
- use the PC's disk drives to store and back up PenPoint documents
- work with the contents of documents, when the PenPoint and PC applications are compatible
- use the PC as a gateway to a network.

You can use a GO PC Cable—FlashCard to connect the computer to a TOPS FlashCard installed on a PC. You can also connect a Quick Charger to a FlashCard by using standard AppleTalk connectors. For more information about using TOPS to transfer files to a PC, or to use that PC as a gateway to a network, see *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

CONNECTING TO A PC

## Connecting Directly to a TOPS FlashCard

You should mount the TOPS FlashCard in a slot on your PC and connect a TOPS TeleConnector to the DB9 connector on the FlashCard, and install TOPS network software on the PC before proceeding. For information, see your TOPS manual and *Connecting to a Personal Computer*.

For this procedure you'll need TOPS software, a TOPS FlashCard for the PC, two TOPS TeleConnectors (one with a MiniDin8 connection and one with a DB9 connection, both supplied with the FlashCard) a length of phone line, and a GO PC Cable—FlashCard. You may also need the terminator resistor that comes with the DB9 TeleConnector.



To connect your GO Computer to a TOPS FlashCard:

- Plug the GO PC cable's Base-Station connector into the top end of the GO Computer.
- 2 The PC—FlashCard cable ends in a MiniDin8 connector. Attach that to the appropriate TeleConnector.
- Plug the ends of a telephone line into the MiniDin8 TeleConnector at one end, and the DB9 TeleConnector at the other.
- **4** Then plug the DB9 TeleConnector into the FlashCard on the PC.
  - This TeleConnector has two plugs. If you're not attaching another device, you'll need to insert the terminating resistor supplied with the TeleConnector.

CONNECTING TO A PC

#### Connecting to a TOPS FlashCard through the GO Quick Charger

You should mount the TOPS FlashCard in a slot on your PC and install TOPS network software on the PC before proceeding. See your TOPS manual and *Connecting to a Personal Computer* for details.

For this procedure you'll need TOPS software and a TOPS FlashCard for the PC, a GO Quick Charger and BaseStation cable, a length of phone line, and two TOPS TeleConnectors. You may also need the terminator resistor that comes with the DB9 TeleConnector.



To connect your GO Computer to the TOPS FlashCard through a Quick Charger:

- 1 Plug the BaseStation cable into the top end of the GO Computer and the Quick Charger's BaseStation connector.
- 2 Plug the round end (MiniDin8) of the TeleConnector into the connector on the end of the Quick Charger.
- Plug the ends of a telephone line into the MiniDin8 TeleConnector at one end, and the DB9 Tele-Connector at the other.
- **4** Then plug the DB9 TeleConnector into the FlashCard on the PC.
  - ▲ This TeleConnector has two plugs. If you're not attaching another device, you'll need to insert the terminating resistor supplied with the TeleConnector.

# Using Option Cartridges

With option cartridges you can add capabilities to your PenPoint computer, such as a modem used for E-mail or fax.

For this procedure you'll need: an option cartridge, such as the GO Fax/Data Modem.



To install an option cartridge:

- **1** Turn off the GO Computer.
- 2 Slide the cartridge into the slot until you hear a click.

To remove a cartridge, squeeze the edges together to release it, then slide it out.

# Connecting A Keyboard

With a GO Quick Charger, you can connect an IBM PS/2 keyboard to your computer.



- Plug the PS/2 keyboard cable into the PS/2 connector on the side of the Quick Charger.
- **2** Attach the Quick Charger to the GO Computer with the BaseStation cable.
- **3** Plug the Quick Charger into a wall outlet.

272

# Caring For Your GO Computer

The GO Computer has been designed and tested to high standards; it's built to travel. You can operate it while you're carrying it around. You can turn it upside down, store it on its side, pack it in a suitcase—treat it like a notebook.

High humidity shouldn't be a problem, but the computer is not hermetically sealed and shouldn't be used outside in the rain, or if you see droplets inside the screen. The computer will operate over a wide range of temperatures (0-45 degrees C.; 32-113 degrees F.) and you can transport and store it in sub-zero conditions. However, it's a good idea to let the computer reach room temperature before you turn it on.

Of course, it's best to avoid testing the computer with sharp shocks, severe static electricity, or spilled liquids. The screen, in particular, has been constructed from very thin glass.

A GO Leather Cover is available to protect the screen from being cracked or punctured. Watch out for sharp-cornered objects when you're packing the computer. Use the GO Carrying Case that comes with every computer for additional protection. When you need to clean the screen, use the spray solution we've provided. Avoid soap and water.

Store the GO pen in its compartment in the top end of the computer to avoid losing it. Regular pens won't work with the GO Computer, so you might want to buy a spare to keep in a safe place.




#### The GO Floppy Drive





#### The GO Travel Charger




# Glossary

Access Speed An option on the Access document option sheet that shortens the time it takes to turn to a document. This option uses more memory than the normal page turn speed.

**Alignment** An option on the Paragraph text option sheet that changes the placement of text within the margins of the page. Use this option, for example, to center a title or align text along the right margin rather than the left margin.

**Application** A software program you install on your PenPoint computer. Applications add new capabilities to your computer. For example, if you add a spreadsheet application, you can work with spreadsheets on the computer. The MiniText application comes with the GO Computer.

**Apply** A button on option sheets and some items of the Bookshelf. Tap  $\mathbf{j}$  **Apply** to tell the PenPointTM operating system to carry out the options you've chosen. Before turning to another option sheet, be sure to tap **Apply** on the current sheet if you want PenPoint to apply your choices.

**Bookshelf** An area at the bottom of the screen that contains tools and auxiliary notebooks to use while working with documents. Each item on the Bookshelf is represented by an icon—a small picture.

**Booting** A procedure to restart PenPoint if an error prevents you from continuing to use the computer.

**Borders & Controls** An option on the Access document option sheet that tells PenPoint whether to display the border (the outline surrounding the document), the title and menu line, and the scroll margins for an embedded document or tool.

**Boxed pad** A writing pad divided into character boxes. In boxed pads, you write a single character in each box and then translate the text in the boxes before transferring it to the page.

**Busy clock** An animated clock symbol that appears when PenPoint is carrying out a command that takes any length of time.

**Cancel** A button on a dialog sheet or message that closes the sheet or message without changing anything.

**Character box** A box in an edit pad or writing pad into which you write one character (letter, number, or punctuation mark).

**Checklist** A list of choices on a menu, option sheet, or dialog sheet. A single line along the left edge of a

checklist indicates that you can choose one option from it; a double line indicates you can choose one or more options.

**Checkpoint** A command on the Document menu which you choose to save your current changes to a document.

**Close corner** A gray triangle in the upper-left corner of a floating document, Bookshelf item, or Notebook. Tap **)** the close corner to close something. (The Notebook has a close corner when you've chosen the zooming option).

**Collapse** A command on the View menu that closes a section in a table of contents so the titles in it are not displayed.

**Command** A choice on a menu. Commands tell the PenPoint operating system what to do next.

**Cork margin** A n area at the bottom of all documents where you can put aside hyperlink buttons, new documents, embedded documents, or tools. The cork margin may be hidden. Draw a *C* in the title line to show it.

**Create menu** A list of the stationery you can use to create new documents. You add or remove stationery from the Create menu with the Stationery notebook, which holds all the stationery in the computer.

**Customized stationery** A stationery document that you have modified and added to the Stationery notebook. You might customize stationery to add text such as a company address to a piece of stationery or to change the standard text and document options.

**Customization set** A set of practice sentences in the Handwriting Customization tool that you copy to teach PenPoint how you write.

**Deactivate** An Installer command that deletes something from the Notebook but leaves a placeholder for it so that you can easily reactivate it later.

**Deselect** The action you take to make a selection go away, usually by tapping it. For example, on the Table of Contents you tap  $\cdot$  to select a document title and tap it again to deselect it.

**Dialog sheet** A form that the PenPoint operating system displays when you choose commands followed by an ellipsis  $(\ldots)$ . You use the dialog sheet to choose options and enter information that's needed before PenPoint can carry out a command.

**Dictionary** A personal dictionary to which you can add words, such as company names and acronyms.

**Directory** A container for organizing documents on a disk. You can place PenPoint documents and sections as well as PC files and subdirectories in a directory.

**Disk Manager** An auxiliary notebook on the Bookshelf that shows you what's contained on a floppy disk, hard disk, or network to which you've connected the PenPoint computer.

**Document** A piece of stationery on which you enter information. Each time you choose a piece of stationery from the Create menu or Stationery notebook, you create a new document that occupies one page of the Notebook.

**Document option sheets** Option sheets on which you note information about a document and set options for how PenPoint displays the document on the page. Document option sheets also provide information about the application.

**Drag** The action of moving the pen across the screen without lifting it.

Edit pad A boxed pad that contains text you want to change. You open an edit pad by drawing a circle  $\circ$  over the text.

**Embedded document** A document inserted within another document, such as a spreadsheet table inserted in a text document. You can hide the borders of the embedded portion so that the printed result looks like one document.

**Embedded pad** A large writing pad that you get by drawing a caret tap  $\uparrow$ . The embedded pad begins where you draw the gesture and the text that's already in the document flows around it.

**Enable** An option on the Page Setup dialog sheet, Print dialog sheet, and Printers option sheet in Tools that tells PenPoint that a printer is connected to the computer. Enabling a printer in one location automatically activates it in the other places.

**Expand** A command on the View menu that opens a section in a table of contents so the titles in it are displayed.

**Export** A command on the Table of Contents' Edit menu that lets you copy a document to a disk and simultaneously convert the file format to one you can use on another computer.

**Field** The text area on forms, option and dialog sheets, and lists. You can write text directly in a field or tap **)** the field to open an edit pad. Fields often have specific functions and labels, such as Name field, Address field, and Telephone field.

**File Format** The way an application stores information. A file format is usually indicated by a three letter extension at the end of a file name, for example, .TXT indicates that a document uses an ASCII text file format.

**First line offset** The amount of space by which you indent the first line of a paragraph.

**Float** To place a document, option sheet, dialog sheet, or Bookshelf item on top of the current page. Option sheets, dialog sheets, and Bookshelf items automatically float when you open them. You float documents by first choosing the document floating option on the Safeguards Preferences sheet and then double tapping **.** The document's page number, icon, or tab. Float documents when you want to use two documents at the same time.

**Floppy disk** A 3.5-inch disk that you format to use on the PenPoint computer.

**Font** A text typeface that's used to display a document on the screen and to print it. You choose fonts for documents from the Text option sheets. Choose an on-screen PenPoint font and field text font from the Fonts & Layout Preferences sheet.

**Footer** The text that runs along the bottom of each page. You can see the footer only when you print the document.

Format (disk) To erase a disk and prepare it so PenPoint can record information on it.

**Format (text)** To style text and position it on the page, for example, by selecting font and character styles and adjusting margins and line spacing. You format text with the Text option sheets.

**Gestures** A symbol or letter you make on the computer screen with the special GO Pen. Gestures are a kind of shorthand that bypass or supplement the menu commands. Individual gestures are defined, with examples, in chapter 3, Drawing Gestures.

**GO Pen** The special pen you use to write on the GO Computer's screen.

Handwriting customization A sheet located in Tools to teach PenPoint how you make your letters.

Handwriting profile The information that tells PenPoint how you write your letters. When you use Handwriting Customization, you modify the standard handwriting profile to create a personalized one which records the way you form letters.

**Header** The text that runs along the top of each page. You can see the header only when you print the document. **Home path** The location on a disk where the PenPoint operating system expects to find a file. PenPoint creates a home path when you first install an application or utility on the computer.

Home volume The disk from which you installed applications or utilities on the PenPoint computer. PenPoint refers to the home volume when you save or update something, or when you deactivate and then reactivate it.

Hyperlink button A marker you attach to a document so that you can instantly jump to it from elsewhere in the same document or different document.

**Icon** A symbol—usually a small picture—that represents a document, an item on the Bookshelf, or an embedded document.

**Import** To copy a PC document to the PenPoint computer. When you copy a PC document, PenPoint automatically displays an import sheet that lists the applications you can use with the document.

**In place** An option on the Access Document option sheet for displaying an embedded document. When you choose **In Place** PenPoint displays the document where you embedded it instead of floating it on top of the page.

**Insertion point** The place at which text is added to the page. For example, to use the software keyboard to add words to a document, you press **>** in the document where you want the new words to go. Doing so sets an insertion point that looks like a vertical line.

**Installer** An auxiliary notebook on the Bookshelf that you use to add, remove, deactivate, and reactivate such items as applications, services, fonts, handwriting profiles, dictionaries, and preference sets.

**Keyboard** A Notebook accessory that displays a software keyboard on the screen. You can tap on a key to place a character in text. You can also use an IBM PS/2 keyboard with the GO Computer.

**Label** The text that identifies icons, tabs, hyperlink buttons, and categories of choices on option and dialog sheets.

**Magnified text** A command on the View text options sheet to increase the size of text on the screen without increasing the font size used for printing.

**Menu** A list of commands located on the menu line. You choose a command by tapping r it. Most menu commands have equivalent gestures.

Menu line The area at the top of the page that contains commands you choose to tell PenPoint what to do next.

**Notebook** The structure that holds the documents you create. The first page of the Notebook is a Table of

Contents. Each succeeding page contains a different document.

**Notebook tab** An identifying label that you attach to any page in the Notebook for easy access. Tabs are arranged along the right side of the screen. You can turn directly to a page by tapping  $\rightarrow$  its tab.

**Option sheet** A PenPoint form that you use to set attributes for a document or for a selection in the document. For example, you can choose a font style for the text in a document from the Text option sheets.

**Page turn arrows** Symbols on either side of the page number in the top-right corner of the page. Tap **y** one of these two arrows to turn one page forward or backward.

**Pop-up pad** A small writing pad that you get by drawing a caret  $\wedge$ . The pop-up pad floats above the text.

**Pop-up list** Choices on an option sheet that are hidden until you display them by tapping **)** the current choice.

**Preferences** A set of option sheets located on the Bookshelf that you use to customize the PenPoint operating system. For example, you can choose a different writing pad style from the Handwriting Preference sheet.

**Primary input** An option on the Pen Preference sheet that sets the way you'll usually enter text. The choices are pen and software keyboard.

**Printers** An option sheet in Tools that lets you set up a printer after you have installed its printer driver. You only set the printer options once for each printer you plan to use.

**Proof sheet** A sheet you use to correct text on the page. You display it by choosing **Proof** from the Edit menu or by drawing a **P** over the text. The Proof sheet includes a list of alternatives for a mistranslated, misspelled, or unrecognized word as well as an edit pad.

**Reactivate** An Installer command that copies a deactivated application or utility to the PenPoint computer.

**Restart** To switch the computer off and then on again when you're working with a document or tool and you find you can't continue working with it. To restart, you press the On/Off button once. Then press it again and hold it down until you see the message that tells you the computer is warm booting.

**Revert** A command on the Document menu that allows you to restore an earlier version of the document. Choosing this command changes the document back to what it was before you last turned the page or chose the **Checkpoint** command.

**Ruled-Boxed pad** A ruled writing pad in which you translate your writing into boxes so you can edit it if necessary before you transfer the text to the page.

**Ruled pad** A writing pad with lines. The PenPoint operating system translates handwriting directly from a ruled pad to the page.

**Scroll** To move a document to see parts of it that do not fit on the screen. Use flicks || in the document, or the scroll handle, or arrows in the scroll margin to see the part of the document that's off the screen.

**Scroll margin** The bar at the right or bottom of the screen that you use to see the part of the document that's off the screen. Drag the scroll handle—the small horizontal bar in the scroll margin—to bring the off screen portion into view. You can also flick on the scroll margin or the document.

**Search range** The amount of a document you want PenPoint to search when it looks for text. You can search a whole document and its embedded documents, or you can limit the search by your choices in the Find & Replace sheet.

**Section** A container you create on the Table of Contents for documents that you want to keep together. Section names appear in bold. Each section also has its own divider, which lists the documents it contains. A section can be expanded to show all the documents in it or closed to show the section name only.

**Select** To indicate something for the next command to act on. Something that's selected looks different; usually the background darkens.

**Selection** Something you've chosen on the screen, such as a title in the Table of Contents, that the next PenPoint command will affect.

**Signature pad** A writing pad you use to add a signature to your correspondence. Your signature is printed as you wrote it; it isn't translated into typed text. Choose Signature Pad from the Insert menu of a MiniText document.

**Special characters** Symbols that the PenPoint operating system uses to indicate line breaks and paragraph marks. To see the special characters, choose this option from the View Text option sheet.

**Stationery** A document you choose from the Create Menu or Stationery notebook to create a new, blank document of a specific type.

**Tab** A marker attached to a document or section in the Notebook. Tap  $\mathbf{y}$  a tab to go to the attached page.

**Tab stops** A preset indentation in text. You set tab stops on the Tab Stops Text option sheet. To insert them in text, you draw an insert tab gesture  $_$  in front of the text you want to indent.

**Text option sheets** Option sheets that allow you to style and format text. For example, you use Text option sheets to select a different font style and to change the placement of text on a page.

**Table of Contents**A list of all the documents andsections in the Notebook.

**Title line** The area of a document at the top of the page that contains the name of the document and the page-turn arrows.

**Tools** Accessories including Handwriting Customization, the Disk Manager, a clock, and a software keyboard. You can add commercially available tools to Tools.

**Translate** To convert your handwriting into typed, electronic text. You translate your writing by tapping the **OK** button on the writing or editing pad.

**Unrecognized character** The symbol PenPoint displays if it doesn't recognize a letter you wrote in a writing or editing pad. The standard symbol is a question mark in a circle. You can change the symbol for the unrecognized character to an underscore symbol with the Unrecognized Character category on the Handwriting Preferences sheet.

**Volume** A floppy disk, a hard disk, or any section of a hard disk designated as a separate drive.

Writing pad A pad on which you write text that the PenPoint operating system translates into typed, electronic text. Writing pads come in different sizes and styles, such as boxed or ruled.

**Zoom** An option that you can choose from the Safeguards Preferences sheet to increase the size of the document to fill the entire screen area.



# Index

## A

About (Document menu), 113, 181, 237 About (Volume menu), 221, 223 Accelerated (Access Speed), 243 Accept, using customization sets and, 138 accessories, using cork margin and, 111 Access sheet Access Speed, 181 Borders & Controls category, 109 changing display and, 203 Cork Margin, 111 customizing documents and, 113 other ways to use memory efficiently and, 243 turning Table of Contents into control panel and, 250 using Document sheet and, 181 Access Speed (Access sheet), 181 Accelerated, 243 accommodating multiple users, 247-248 Active Size (Title & Info sheet), 181 adapters, serial printer, 261 Add (Edit menu), 80 adding footers, 208 headers, 208 page breaks to MiniText documents, 161 signatures to documents, 167 stationery to Create menu, 88 text, 147 words to dictionary, 166 Add Printers sheet, 81 adjusting writing pad size and shape, 133 alarm, setting, 204. See also Clock Alarm sheet, setting alarm and, 204 aligning pen, 123 Alignment (Paragraph sheet), 159 All (Pages pop-up list), 209 Allowed (Zooming Documents category), 238 floating documents and, 97 zooming documents and, 100

{Alt}, correcting text in writing pads by typing and, 135 A.M., setting time and, 195 applications changes to, 74 deactivating, 76-77 described, 7 installing, 66-82 from disk, 68–70 Applications sheet, 68, 76 backing up stationery and, 91 using Document sheet and, 181 Apply choosing options with, 25, 26 copying formats or styles and, 162 Apply & Close choosing options with, 26 arrow down, gesture profile for, 41 arrows. See page arrows; scroll arrows arrow up, gesture profile for, 41 attaching Notebook tabs, 189, 190 attributes, described, 23 automatic installation, 70 copying documents to floppy disk and, 217 using Disk Manager and, 219 Auto Shut Off option No. 197 setting alarm and, 204 using, 179 Yes, 197 ∎ B backing up Notebook, 237-239 stationery, 91

Backward (Direction category pop-up list), 174 BaseStation cable connecting directly to disk drive and, 264 connecting GO Floppy Drive through GO Quick Charger and, 263 connecting keyboard and, 272

#### INDEX

connecting to serial printers through GO Quick Charger and, 262 using floppy disks and, 265 using GO Quick Charger and, 257 BaseStation modules. See specific BaseStation module BaseStation port, 80 basic gestures, 36 batter(ies) installing, 259 recharging, 255-257 with GO Quick Charger, 257 with GO Travel Charger, 256 removing, 258 replacing, 258-259 battery pack, removing, 258 Begin, using Letter Practice and, 137 Begin on New Page (Formatting category), 109, 212 Beginning (Start From category pop-up list), 174 Between Lines (Paragraph sheet), 158 bigger, making objects, 15 black checkmark, 26 bold gesture profile for, 41 making text, 41 styling text directly and, 155 Bookshelf described, 6 gestures on, 39 illustrated, 6 moving icons on, 28 moving items on, 200 seeing what's on, 16–22 See also Disks; Help; In box; Installer; Keyboard; Out box; Preferences; Stationery; Tools booting described, 246 PenPoint, when frozen, 246 restoring Notebook after, 238-239 See also cold booting borders, gesture profile for, 41 Borders & Controls category (Access sheet), 109 Show, 109 borders of embedded documents, hiding, 41 bottom handles, making objects bigger or smaller with, 15 Boxed (Writing Pad pop-up list), 128

boxed pads choosing, 128 described, 128 editing text in, gestures for, 38 insert space in, 52 pigtail in, 57 setting insertion point in, with press, 59 writing in, 120 See also writing pad(s) Box Shape pop-up list, adjusting writing pad size and shape and, 133 Box Size pop-up list, adjusting writing pad size and shape and, 133 bracket, left, gesture profile for, 42 bracket, right, gesture profile for, 42 breaks line, inserting, 161 page, adding to MiniText documents, 161 paragraph, inserting, 161 Bring to (View menu), 188 busy clock, described, 11. See also Clock Button (Show menu), 179, 180 buttons, dismissing objects with, 13. See also specific button By Date (Sort menu), 182 By Name (Sort menu), 182 By Page (Sort menu), 182 By Size (Sort menu), 182 By Type (Sort menu), 182

## **C**

cables BaseStation cable, 257, 262, 263, 264, 265, 272 GO PC Cable—FlashCard, 260–262, 268–270 GO Serial Printer Cable, 260–262 SCSI-II to SCSI-I connector cable, 267 Cancel deleting documents and, 104 dismissing objects with, 13 editing text in edit pads, 149 translating handwriting and, 122 writing in ruled pads and, 129 caret, gesture profile for, 43 caret tap, gesture profile for, 43

caring for GO computer, 273 carrying case. See GO Carrying Case case. See GO Carrying Case Case menu, styling text directly and, 155 changes saving, 74-75 to applications, 74 to services, 74 changing date, 196 display, 203 edit pad style, 130 home volume, 78 icon size, 200 line spacing, 158 paragraph spacing, 158 response time, 196 time zones, 195 writing pad style, 130 characters adding, 147 deleting, 124, 125, 148, 149 selecting, 144 Character sheet creating customized stationery and, 90 Hidden, 163 styling text with Text sheet and, 156 chargers. See GO Quick Charger; GO Travel Charger check, gesture profile for, 44 checking spelling, 165-166 check lists, choosing options from, 25 check marks dimmed, customizing documents and, 113 styling text with Text sheet and, 156 Checkpoint (Document menu), 77, 104, 236, 243, 244, 245, 258check tap, gesture profile for, 44 choosing boxed pads, 128 field fonts, 198 fonts, 198 menu commands, 10 options, 25-26 page layouts, 207 ruled-boxed pads, 131-132

ruled pads, 129-130 screen layouts, 199 style of writing pads, 128-133 writing pad size and shape, 133 circle, gesture profile for, 45 circle line, gesture profile for, 45 circles, concentric, 11, 34 circle tap, gesture profile for, 46. See also hyperlink buttons cleaning screen, 273 Clear choosing ruled-boxed pads and, 131 editing text in edit pads, 149 using customization sets and, 138 writing in ruled pads and, 129 Clock described, 18 using, 202-204 See also alarm; busy clock; date(s); time; Tools clock sheet changing display and, 203 setting alarm and, 204 Close automatic installation and, 70 choosing options with, 26 closing Preferences sheet with, 17 closing Tools with, 18 copying documents to floppy disks and, 217 dismissing objects with, 13 finding text and, 170 installing applications with, 68 replacing text and, 172 using Disk Manager and, 219 close corners, dismissing objects with, 13 closing icons, 227 menus, 10 cold booting, described, 246. See also booting Collapse (View menu), 179, 221 Collate pop-up list printing documents and, 210 Yes, 210 commands described, 7, 10 dimmed, 10 giving with gestures and menus, 10-11

illustrated, 6 See also gestures; menus/menu commands or specific command Complete word only, refining searches and, 175 compound documents. See embedded documents concentric circles, 11, 34 connecting keyboard, 272 printers, 79-80 SCSI hard drive, 267 to GO Floppy Drive directly, 264 through GO Quick Charger, 263 to PC, 268-270 to printer, 260-262 to serial printer directly, 260 through GO Quick Charger, 262 to TOPS FlashCard directly, 269 through GO Quick Charger, 270 connector cable. See SCSI-II to SCSI-I connector cable connectors, serial printer, 261 container documents, printing embedded documents within, 212. See also embedded documents contents. See Table of Contents Contents tab, illustrated, 9 Continue, formatting floppy disks and, 235 control panel, turning Table of Contents into, 249-250 converting PC documents to PenPoint documents, 233-234 PenPoint documents to PC format, 230-232 Copies, printing documents and, 210 Copy (Edit menu), 153 Copy Contents (Volume menu), 228, 229 copying dictionaries, 72 disks, 228-229 documents from hard disk to floppy disk, 226 to floppy disk, 217 documents or sections to disk, 224 formats, 162 hyperlink buttons, 193 Notebook objects, 28-29

objects gestures for, 36 with tap press, 63 selections with tap press, 63 styles, 162 text, 152-153 gestures for, 36 to home, shortcut for, 75 Copy to Home (Home menu), 74, 91 connecting printers and, 79 cork margin gesture profile for, 46 turning Table of Contents into control panel and, 250 using, 111–112 using hyperlink buttons to move between pages and, 193 Cork margin, setting alarm and, 204 Cork Margin (Access sheet), 111 Cork Margin (Show category), 250 corner handles, making objects bigger or smaller with, 15 correcting text in writing pad by typing, 135 translations, 124-125 with Proof sheet, 125 in writing pad, 124 cover. See GO Leather Cover Create copying dictionaries with, 72 shortcut for creating handwriting profiles, dictionaries, or preference sets with, 72 Create & Close, copying dictionaries with, 72 Create Directory (Edit menu), 222 Create menu, 84 adding stationery to, 88 creating customized stationery and, 90 creating Disk Manager stationery and, 223 moving documents into sections and, 185 Notebook, 247 pop-up, 86, 90, 105 creating sections and, 184 Section, 186 using cork margin and, 111 using to create documents, 85-86 cross out, gesture profile for, 11, 47 {Ctrl}, correcting text in writing pads by typing and, 135 Current, described, 67

customization sets, using, 138–139 customized indexes, creating, 251–252 customized stationery, creating, 89–90 customizing documents, 113 handwriting, 136–141 Help notebook, 201

## D 🛛

dark check marks, styling text with Text sheet and, 156 dark gray highlights, using customization sets and, 139 date(s) printing, 208 setting, 196 See also Clock Date (Show menu), 180, 182, 221 Date (Sort menu), 221 Date Format, setting date and, 196 Date sheet setting date and, 196 setting preferences and, 194 Day, setting date and, 196 DB9 connectors, 261 DB25 connectors, 261 Deactivate (Home menu), 76, 77 deactivating applications, 76-77 described, 66 fonts, 77 things you can safely deactivate, 243 utilities, 76-77 defining searches, 173-175 Delete (Edit menu), 104, 167, 223 deleting or purging stationery and, 92 deleting, 76 characters, 124, 125, 149 documents, 104 from Disk Manager, 223 Help notebook, 201 hyperlink buttons, 193 Notebook tabs, 189 objects, gestures for, 36 Quick Help, 201 sections, 184

stationery, 92 text, 148 gestures for, 36 things you can safely delete, 243 deselecting, described, 12 device drivers, defined, 66 devices, installing, 66-82 dialog sheets described, 23 using, 23-27 See also option sheets or specific dialog sheet dictionar(ies) adding words to, 166 changing home volume for, 78 copying, 72 creating, 71 shortcut for, 72 Dictionaries sheet, 72, 78 dimmed check marks customizing documents and, 113 styling text with Text sheet and, 156 dimmed commands, 10 dimmed options, 26 direction, search, 173-174 Direction category pop-up list, Backward, 174 directories described, 219 new, creating, 222 disk(s) copying, 228-229 copying documents or sections to, 224 duplicating, 228-229 ejecting, 220 from GO Floppy Drive manually, 266 finding out more about what's on, 221 installing applications from, 68-70 installing utilities from, 68-70 renaming, 223 transferring documents between, 226-227 See also floppy disks; hard disk; volume(s) disk drive. See GO Floppy Drive; hard disk Disk Manager changing home volume and, 78 deleting documents from, 223 described, 18, 216

eject in, 49 using, 218-223 See also Tools Disk Manager stationery, creating, 223 Disks, 20. See also Bookshelf dismissing objects, 13 display, changing, 203 Displayed (Seconds category), 195 displaying Notebook tabs, 191 option sheets, 24 Display sheet, changing display and, 203 Document Floating option, floating documents and, 178 Document menu, 213 About, 113, 181, 237 Checkpoint, 77, 104, 236, 243, 244, 245, 258 Print, 22, 82, 110, 207, 209, 210, 212 Print Setup, 109, 110, 157, 207, 208, 212 Revert, 104, 236 Send, 22 document names, printing, 208 Document Only (Search category pop-up list), 173 document options, setting, 107 documents adding signatures to, 167 container, printing embedded documents within, 212 copying, to floppy disk, 217 creating, 84-113 using Create menu, 85-86 using Stationery notebook, 87-88 customizing, 113 deleting, 104 from Disk Manager, 223 described, 6 editing text in, gestures for, 37-38 embedded, 39, 107-110 floating, 108 hiding borders of, 41 making full-page documents, 107 moving, 107 printing, 109–110, 211–212 using hyperlink buttons to move between pages and, 193 existing, embedding, 106 filing, 216–239 finding out more about, 180–181

floating, 97-98, 99, 178, 187 frozen, restarting PenPoint when, 245 full-page, making embedded documents, 107 grouping into sections, 184–186 moving into sections, 185 navigating, tips on, 249-252 new, embedding, 105 in Notebook, 8-9 PC, converting to PenPoint documents, 233-234 PenPoint converting PC documents to, 233-234 converting to PC format, 230–232 previewing, 164 printing, 82, 206–213 receiving, 206-213 renaming, 86, 102–103, 223 saving, 104, 236 scrolling, 93–96 selecting, 144 sending, 206–213 setting options for, gestures for, 39 spell in, 61 transferring, 224-227 between disks, 226-227 to and from Notebook, 224–225 turning to, 9 using, 84-113 tips on, 249–252 zooming, 100-101 Document sheet creating customized stationery and, 89 customizing documents and, 113 finding out more about documents and, 180 setting print options for embedded documents and, 109 using, 181 cork margin and, 111 document title line, gestures in, 39 document titles editing text in, 150 illustrated, 9, 179 Document Zooming option, creating Notebooks and, 248 double caret, gesture profile for, 47 double flick down, gesture profile for, 48 double flick left, gesture profile for, 48 double flick right, gesture profile for, 48 double flick up, gesture profile for, 48

## double tap gesture profile for, 49 to select words, 144 Draw, scrolling documents and, 93 drawing gestures, 34–64 drive. *See* GO Floppy Drive; hard disk dt., adding date to headers and footers and, 208 Duplicate (Volume menu), 228 duplicating disks, 228–229

## E E

editing fill-in fields on forms, 38 overwrite fields on forms, 38 text, 144-167 in boxed writing pads, 38 in documents, 37-38 in edit pads, 38, 149 in fields, 150-151 in labels and document titles, 150 in ruled writing pads, 38 Edit menu, 28, 29 Add, 80 Copy, 153 Create Directory, 222 Delete, 104, 167, 223 Export, 230 Find, 170, 171 moving and copying text and, 152 Options, 78, 156 Rename, 86, 102, 223 Select All, 90, 144 Spell, 165 edit pads changing style of, 130 editing text in, 149 gestures for, 38 using, 150 eject, gesture profile for, 49 Eject automatic installation and, 70 using floppy disks and, 265, 266 Eject & Forget, using Disk Manager and, 220 ejecting disks, 220 from GO Floppy Drive manually, 266

Eject & Remember (Volume menu), 227 using Disk Manager and, 220 electricity, static, 273 ellipsis, described, 23 embedded documents floating, 108 hiding borders of, 41 making full-page documents, 107 moving, 107 printing, 109-110, 211-212 using hyperlink buttons to move between pages and, 193 working with, 107-110 gestures for, 39 embedded writing pads adding text and, 147 described, 126 getting, 127 embedding described, 84 existing documents, 106 new documents, 105 tools, 106 Empty, moving documents into sections and, 185 Enabled, printing documents and, 82 Enabled box, printing from Out box and, 211 Enabled checkbox, 81, 82 Enabled column, printing from Out box and, 211 existing documents, embedding, 106 Exit analyzing progress and, 140 using customization sets and, 139 Exit Handwriting Customization analyzing progress and, 140 using customization sets and, 139 using Letter Practice and, 137 Expand (View menu), 179, 221 export, gesture profile for, 49 Export (Edit menu), 230 exporting described, 230 documents, 230-231 Export sheet described, 216 exporting documents and, 231

#### INDEX

## ∎ F

female DB9 connectors, 261 female DB25 connectors, 261 field fonts, choosing, 198 fields editing text in, 150-151 fill-in described, 150 on forms, 38 overwrite described, 151 on forms, 38 text, described, 26 Filed Size (Title & Info sheet), 181 backing up Notebook and, 237 File menu, Rename, 184 filing documents, 216-239 fill-in fields described, 150 on forms, editing, 38 find, gesture profile for, 50 Find defining searches and, 173 finding text and, 170 replacing text and, 171, 172 Find (Edit menu), 170, 171 finding text, 170-175 Find & Replace sheet defining searches and, 173, 174 refining searches and, 175 replacing text and, 171 Find sheet finding text and, 170 replacing text and, 171 1st Line Offset (Paragraph sheet), 158 First Page adding headers and footers and, 208 printing documents and, 210 Yes, 208 FlashCard. See TOPS FlashCard flick down, gesture profile for, 51 flick left, gesture profile for, 50 flick right, gesture profile for, 50 flicks, described, 93

flick up, gesture profile for, 51 floating described, 84 documents, 97-98, 178, 187 embedded documents, 108 pages, 187 floating documents moving, 99 resizing, 99 Floating Documents, floating documents and, 97 floating option, setting, 97 floppy disks changing home volume for dictionaries from one to another, 78 copying documents from hard disk to, 226 copying documents to, 217 copying to hard disk, 229 duplicating, 228 formatting, 235 transferring documents from one to another, 227 using, 265-266 See also disk(s) Floppy Drive. See GO Floppy Drive Font category, creating customized stationery and, 90 fonts choosing, 198 deactivating, 77 field, choosing, 198 symbol, 77 Fonts & Layout sheet choosing PenPoint fonts and field fonts and, 198 choosing screen layouts and, 199 setting preferences and, 194 Fonts sheet, 77 Footer, adding headers and footers and, 208 Footer Margin, adding headers and footers and, 208 footers, adding, 208 format(s) copying, 162 described, 216 PC, 230-232 Format (Volume menu), 235 Format menu For Printer, 164 For Screen, 164

formatting floppy disks, 235 text, 144-167 Formatting category (Layout sheet), 109, 110 Begin on New Page, 109, 212 Keep on Same Page, 109, 212 Print Entire Document, 109, 110, 212 Formatting option, printing embedded documents and, 109 forms fill-in fields on, 38 overwrite fields on, 38 For Printer (Format menu), 164 For Screen (Format menu), 164 frozen documents, restarting PenPoint when, 245 frozen PenPoint, booting when, 246 full-page documents, making embedded documents, 107 function keys, correcting text in writing pads by typing and, 135 fundamentals, 6-31

## **G**

Gesture, setting response time and, 196 gesture profile(s)

for arrow down, 41 for arrow up, 41 for bold, 41 for borders, 41 for bracket, left, 42 for bracket, right, 42 for caret, 43 for caret tap, 43 for check, 44 for check tap, 44 for circle, 45 for circle line, 45 for circle tap, 46 for cork margin, 46 for cross out, 11, 47 described, 3, 11, 34 for double caret, 47 for double flick down, 48 for double flick left, 48 for double flick right, 48 for double flick up, 48 for double tap, 49 for eject, 49

for export, 49 for find, 50 for flick down, 51 for flick left, 50 for flick right, 50 for flick up, 51 for initial caps, 51 for insert character, 52 for insert space, 52-53 for insert tab, 53 for italic, 54 for line through, 54 for lower case, 55 for menu, 55 for new line, 55 for new paragraph, 56 for normal, 56 for pigtail, 57 for plus, 57 for press, 58-59 for proof, 59 for quadruple tap, 59 for question mark, 60 for scratch out, 60 for spell, 61 for tab, 61 for tap, 62 for tap press, 63 for triple tap, 63 for underline, 64 for upper case, 64 using, 35 gestures basic, 36 on Bookshelf, 39 for copying and moving text and objects, 36 for deleting text and objects, 36 described, 7, 10 in document title line, 39 drawing, 34-64 for editing fill-in fields on forms, 38 for editing overwrite fields on forms, 38 for editing text in boxed and ruled writing pads, 38 for editing text in documents, 37-38 for editing text in edit pads, 38 for getting help, 38 giving commands with, 10-11 illustrated, 6 on Notebook tabs, 40

PenPoint, 36-64 for scrolling, 39 in scroll margin, 40 for setting options for documents, text, and objects, 39 in Table of Contents, 40 using, 34-35 for working with embedded documents, 39 See also commands; menus/menu commands or specific gesture GO Carrying Case, 273 GO Floppy Drive booting and, 246 connecting, through GO Quick Charger, 263 connecting to, directly, 264 formatting floppy disks and, 235 manually ejecting disks from, 266 using, 263–264 using floppy disks and, 265 using floppy disks in, 265 using GO Travel Charger and, 256 using hard drives and, 267 GO Leather Cover, 273 GO PC Cable—FlashCard connecting to PCs and, 268-270 connecting to printers and, 260-262 GO pen, 273 aligning, 123 described, 7 GO Quick Charger connecting GO Floppy Drive through, 263 connecting keyboard and, 272 connecting printers to, 80 connecting serial printer to through, 262 connecting to PCs and, 268-270 connecting to printers and, 260-262 connecting TOPS FlashCard to through, 270 recharging battery and, 255 using, 257 using floppy disks and, 265 using GO Travel Charger and, 256 GO Release Notes, connecting to printers and, 260 GO Serial Printer Cable, connecting to printers and, 260–262 GO Travel Charger recharging battery and, 255 using, 256 gray checkmark, 26

gray highlights, using customization sets and, 139 grouping documents into sections, 184–186

## H 🔳

handle(s) bottom, making objects bigger or smaller with, 15 corner, making objects bigger or smaller with, 15 scroll described, 95 scrolling documents and, 96 Hand Preference choosing screen layouts and, 199 Left, 199 handwriting customizing, 136-141 translating, 122-123 Handwriting, setting response time and, 196 Handwriting Customization, 71 accommodating multiple users and, 141 customizing handwriting and, 136 described, 18 See also Tools handwriting profiles accommodating multiple users and, 141 creating, shortcut for, 72 renaming, 71 saving changes to, 74 Handwriting sheet, 67, 74 adjusting writing pad size and shape and, 133 choosing boxed pads and, 128 choosing ruled-boxed pads and, 131 choosing ruled pads and, 129 correcting translations in writing pad and, 124 printing in upper case and, 121 setting preferences and, 194 Upper Case Only, 138 viewing, 67 Handwriting Timeout, translating handwriting and, 123 hard disk copying documents to floppy disk from, 226 copying floppy disk to, 229 using, 267 See also disk(s); SCSI hard drive hard drive. See hard disk Header, adding headers and footers and, 208 Header Font, adding headers and footers and, 208

Header Margin, adding headers and footers and, 208 headers, adding, 208 Headers & Footers sheet, adding headers and footers and, 208 Header sheet, printing embedded documents and, 110 Header Size, adding headers and footers and, 208 help getting, 30-31 gestures for, 38 See also Help; Help notebook; Quick Help Help (icon), 16. See also Bookshelf; help; Help notebook; Quick Help Help notebook customizing, 201 deleting, 201 using, 31 See also help; Help; Quick Help Help Notebook (button), 16 closing Quick Help with, 30 opening Help notebook with, 31 Hidden (Character sheet), 163 hiding borders of embedded documents, 41 highlights, using customization sets and, 139 home copying to, shortcut for, 75 described, 66 Home menu Copy to Home, 74, 91 Deactivate, 76 Update from Home, 74 home path, described, 78 home volume changing, 78 saving changes to, 74 updating from, 75 Home Volume (button), copying dictionaries with, 72 Hour, setting time and, 195 humidity, 273 hyperlink buttons copying, 193 creating customized indexes and, 251-252 deleting, 193 described, 178 moving, 193

redefining, 193

298

renaming, 193 turning Table of Contents into control panel and, 250 using cork margin and, 111 using to move between pages, 192–193 *See also* circle tap

## 🔳 I, J

IBM PS/2 keyboard. See keyboard Icon (Show menu), 180 icons on Bookshelf, moving, 28 closing, 227 described, 6 document, 179 illustrated, 9, 187 moving, 200 Icon sheet changing icon size and, 200 finding out more about what's on disks and, 221 icon size, changing, 200 Ignore, checking spelling and, 165 Import, converting PC documents to PenPoint documents and, 233 Import sheet converting PC documents to PenPoint documents and, 233, 234 copying documents or sections to disk and, 225 described, 216 sending and receiving documents and, 213 Import to options, Placeholder, 234 In box, 22, sending and receiving documents and, 213. *See also* Bookshelf indexes, customized, creating, 251-252 Individual Character customization, using customization sets and, 139 initial caps gesture profile for, 51 styling text directly and, 155 In Place (Open category), 108 insert character, gesture profile for, 52 inserting line breaks, 161 paragraph breaks, 161 spaces, 124, 125, 149 in text, 148

insertion point setting in boxed pads, 59 in text, 58 Insert menu getting writing pads and, 127 Page Break, 161 Signature Pad, 167 Tab, 160 insert space, gesture profile for, 52-53 insert tab, gesture profile for, 53 Install automatic installation and, 70 installing applications with, 68 installation, automatic, 70 Install & Eject automatic installation and, 70 installing applications with, 68 Installer, 21 accommodating multiple users and, 141 described, 66 See also Bookshelf Installer sheet, changing home volume and, 78 Install from Disk, 68, 69 installing applications, 66-82 from disk, 68-70 batteries, 259 devices, 66-82 option cartridges, 271 utilities from disk, 68-70 italic gesture profile for, 54 styling text directly and, 155

## III K

Keep on Same Page (Formatting category), 109, 212 keyboard connecting, 272 using to write, 134–135 *See also* Keyboard; software keyboard Keyboard (icon), 21 described, 18 *See also* Bookshelf; keyboard; software keyboard; Tools

## ∎ L

labels, editing text in, 150. See also Notebook tabs; tabs Landscape (Orientation), 199, 207 layouts, screen, choosing, 199 Layout sheet choosing page layouts and, 207 Formatting category, 109, 110 printing embedded documents and, 109, 110, 212 learning more about Penpoint, 242–252 to write on screen, 116 leather cover. See GO Leather Cover Left (Hand Preference), 199 left bracket. See bracket, left Left Margin (Paragraph sheet), 157 left page arrow. See page arrows letterhead stationery, 211 Letter Practice customizing handwriting and, 136 described, 18 using, 116, 137 See also Tools letters, mistranslated/unrecognized, correcting, 124 light gray highlights, using customization sets and, 139 line breaks, inserting, 161 Line Height (Paragraph sheet), 158 lines, new, starting, 161 line spacing, changing, 158 line through, gesture profile for, 54 liquids, spilled, 273 lithium battery, removing batteries and, 258 lower case gesture profile for, 55 styling text directly and, 155

## M 🖿

magnifying text, 164 male DB9 connectors, 261 male DB25 connectors, 261 managing memory, 242–244

Notebook, 178-204 Stationery notebook, 91-92 manually ejecting disks from GO Floppy Drive, 266 margin(s) scroll, 95 gestures in, 40 scrolling documents and, 96 setting, 157 marking pages using Notebook tabs, 189-191 memory finding out how much something uses, 242 managing, 242-244 other ways to use efficiently, 243 out of memory message and, 244 Memory Usage sheet finding out how much memory something uses and, 242 setting preferences and, 194 menu, gesture profile for, 55 Menu box, creating Disk Manager stationery and, 223 menu commands choosing, 10 described, 10 menu line creating customized indexes and, 251 illustrated, 6 turning Table of Contents into control panel and, 250 Menu Line (Show category), 250 menus/menu commands closing, 10 described, 7 giving commands with, 10–11 illustrated, 6 See also commands; gestures or specific menu/menu command MiniText getting writing pads and, 127 printing in writing pads and, 117, 118 setting tabs and, 160 styling text directly and, 155 MiniText documents, adding page breaks to, 161 Minute, setting time and, 195 mistranslated/unrecognized letters, correcting, 124 Model pop-up list, 80 Modified, described, 67

Modified column, saving changes and, 74 moving between pages, using hyperlink buttons, 192-193 documents, into sections, 185 embedded documents, 107 floating documents, 99 hyperlink buttons, 193 icons, 200 items on Bookshelf, 200 Notebook objects, 14, 28–29 objects gestures for, 36 with press, 58 pages, 183 selections, with press, 58 text, 152-153 gestures for, 36 multiple check lists, 26 choosing options from, 25 selecting from, 12 multiple Notebooks, creating, 186 multiple users, accommodating, 141, 247-248

#### **N**

Name, described, 67 Name (Sort menu), 221 names, document, printing, 208 navigating documents, tips on, 249-252 new directories, creating, 222 new documents, embedding, 105 new line, gesture profile for, 55 new lines, starting, 161 new pages, starting, 161 new paragraph, gesture profile for, 56 new paragraphs, starting, 161 Next using customization sets and, 139 using Letter Practice and, 137 nm., adding document name to headers and footers and, 208 normal gesture profile for, 56 styling text directly and, 155 Not Displayed (Seconds category), 195

Notebook(s) backing up, 237-239 booting and, 246 creating, 247-248 described, 6, 178 documents in, 8-9 finding out what's installed in, 67 managing, 178-204 multiple, creating, 186 printing documents from pages in, 209-210 rearranging, 183 restoring, 238-239 seeing what's in, 179 transferring documents and sections to and from, 224–225 writing in, 116-141 See also specific notebook Notebook (Create menu), 247 Notebook objects copying, 28-29 moving, 14, 28-29 working with, 13-15 See also objects Notebook tabs attaching, 189, 190 deleting, 189 described, 178 displaying, 191 gestures on, 40 illustrated, 187 using to mark pages, 189-191 See also labels; tabs numbers page described, 7 illustrated, 9, 187 printing, 208

## ■ 0

objects copying gestures for, 36 with tap press, 63 deleting, gestures for, 36 dismissing, 13 making bigger/smaller, 15 moving gestures for, 36 with press, 58

setting options for, gestures for, 39 See also Notebook objects Open category In Place, 108 Popup, 108 operating, 273 option cartridges, using, 271 options choosing, 25-26 dimmed, 26 setting, gestures for, 39 Options (Edit menu), 78, 156 option sheets described, 17, 23 displaying, 24 using, 23-27 See also dialog sheets or specific option sheet Option Slot, 80 Options sheet, 81 Orientation choosing page layouts and, 207 Landscape, 199, 207 Portrait, 199, 207 Original word, refining searches and, 175 Other category (Paper Size), 209 Out box, 22 described, 206 printing documents and, 82 printing from, 211 sending and receiving documents and, 213 See also Bookshelf out of memory message, 244 overwrite fields described, 151 on forms, editing, 38

## ∎ P

pads. See writing pad(s)
page arrows

described, 178
turning to pages and, 188

Page Break (Insert menu), 161
page breaks, adding to MiniText documents, 161
page layouts, choosing, 207

pen. See GO pen

302

page numbers described, 7 illustrated, 9, 187 printing, 208

#### pages

copying sentences between, 29 floating, 187 marking using Notebook tabs, 189-191 moving, 183 moving between using hyperlink buttons, 192-193 new, starting, 161 in Notebook, printing documents from, 209-210 turning to, 187–188 typing text onto, 134 See also sections; subsections Pages pop-up list All, 209 printing documents and, 209 page turn arrow, described, 11 Paper Size choosing page layouts and, 207 Other category, 209 printing documents and, 209 paragraph breaks, inserting, 161 paragraphs new, starting, 161 selecting, 144 Paragraph sheet Alignment, 159 Between Lines, 158 changing line spacing and, 158 1st Line Offset, 158 Left Margin, 157 Line Height, 158 Right Margin, 157 setting margins and, 157 Space After, 158 Space Before, 158 paragraph spacing, changing, 158 path, home, described, 78 PC, connecting to, 268-270 PC Cable—FlashCard. See GO PC Cable—FlashCard PC documents, converting to PenPoint documents, 233 - 234PC format, converting PenPoint documents to, 230-232 PenPoint, booting when frozen, 246 Penpoint creating and using documents in, 84-113 drawing gestures in, 34-64 editing and formatting text in, 144–167 filing documents in, 216-239 finding and replacing text in, 170–175 fundamentals in, 6-31 PenPoint, gestures in, 36-64 Penpoint installing applications and devices in, 66-82 learning more about, 242-252 managing Notebook in, 178-204 printing, sending, and receiving documents in, 206-213 PenPoint, restarting when documents freeze, 245 Penpoint Using PenPoint and, 2–3 writing in Notebook in, 116-141 PenPoint documents converting PC documents to, 233-234 converting to PC format, 230-232 PenPoint fonts. See fonts PenPoint sheet, setting preferences and, 194 Pen sheet aligning pen and, 123 setting preferences and, 194 Tap to Align Pen category, 123 Personal Dictionary, described, 18. See also Tools personalized utilities, creating, 71-73 pg., adding page numbers to headers and footers and, 208 pigtail, gesture profile for, 57 Placeholder (Import to options), 234 plus, gesture profile for, 57 P.M., setting time and, 195 point size, styling text directly and, 155 Popup (Open category), 108 pop-up Create menu, 86 creating customized stationery and, 90 creating new documents inside existing ones and, 105 creating sections and, 184 Section, 184

pop-up lists, 26 choosing options from, 25 described, 25 See also specific pop-up list pop-up pad adding text and, 147 described, 126 getting, 126 port, described, 206 Port pop-up list, 80 Portrait (Orientation), 199, 207 positioning text, 159 preferences creating, 71 described, 178 setting, 194-199 Preferences, See also Bookshelf Preferences (icon), 17 preference sets, creating, shortcut for, 72 Preferences sheet floating documents and, 97, 187 setting preferences and, 194 setting time and, 195 Timeout category, 34 press, gesture profile for, 58-59 Press, setting response time and, 196 previewing documents, 164 Print (Document menu), 22, 82, 110, 207, 209, 210, 212 Print & Close, printing documents and, 210 Print dialog, printing documents and, 82 Print Entire Document (Formatting category), 109, 110, 212 Print Entire Document (Print Setup menu), 211 Printer (command), described, 206 printer cable. See GO Serial Printer Cable printer drivers, described, 206 Printer Enabled category, printing documents and, 82 Printer Enabled pop-up list, 209 printing documents and, 209 printer options, setting, 81-82 Printer pop-up list, printing documents and, 209, 211 Printer port, 80

printers connecting to, 260-262 described, 206 setting up, 79-82 Printers (icon) connecting printers and, 79 described, 18, 206 See also Tools Printers sheet, 81, 82 connecting printers and, 79 printing dates, 208 document names, 208 documents, 82, 206-213 embedded documents, 109-110, 211-212 from Out box, 211 page numbers, 208 in upper case, 121 in writing pads, 117–121 print options, setting for embedded documents, 109 Print Setup (Document menu), 109, 110, 157, 207, 208, 212 Print Setup menu, Print Entire Document, 211 Print Setup sheet, printing embedded documents and, 109, 110, 211 procedures described, 2 using, 2–3 profiles. See gesture profile(s); handwriting profiles proof, gesture profile for, 59 Proof sheet, correcting translations with, 125 Proximity/Merriam-Webster Linguibase, 166 PS/2 keyboard. See keyboard Purge, deleting or purging stationery and, 92 purging described, 92 stationery, 92

## l Q

quadruple tap gesture profile for, 59 to select paragraphs, 144 question mark, gesture profile for, 60

question mark symbol
choosing ruled pads and, 130
correcting translations in writing pad and, 124
Quick Charger. See GO Quick Charger
Quick Help
deleting, 201
getting, 30
See also help; Help; Help notebook
Quit, using Letter Practice and, 116

## ■ R

rain, 273 range, search, 173-174 Reached End, finding text and, 170 Reactivate, 77 reactivating, described, 66 Read Only finding out more about what's on disks and, 221 rearranging items on Bookshelf, 200 Notebook, 183 receiving documents, 206-213 recharging battery, 255-257 with GO Quick Charger, 257 with GO Travel Charger, 256 redefining hyperlink buttons, 193 refining searches, 175 Refresh (View menu), 219 removing batteries, 258 Rename (Edit menu), 86, 102, 223 Rename (File menu), 184 renaming before saving, 75 disks, 223 documents, 86, 102-103, 223 handwriting profiles, 71 hyperlink buttons, 193 sections, 184 stationery, 91 Repeat field, setting alarm and, 204 Replace adding words to dictionary and, 166 checking spelling and, 165

refining searches and, 175 replacing text and, 171, 172 Replace All, replacing text and, 171, 172 Replacement word, refining searches and, 175 replacing battery, 258-259 text, 170-175 words, 149 reset button, booting and, 246 Reset for same time, setting alarm and, 204 resetting time, 195 resizing floating documents, 99 response time, setting, 196 restarting, 244 PenPoint, when documents freeze, 245 restoring Notebook, 238-239 Revert (Document menu), 104, 236 right bracket. See bracket, right Right Margin (Paragraph sheet), 157 right page arrow. See page arrows Ruled (Writing Pad pop-up list), 129 Ruled-Boxed (Writing Pad pop-up list), 131 ruled-boxed pads choosing, 131-132 described, 128 writing in, 131-132 See also writing pad(s) Ruled Height pop-up list, adjusting writing pad size and shape and, 133 ruled pads choosing, 129-130 described, 128 editing text in, gestures for, 38 writing in, 120, 129 See also writing pad(s)

## **9** S

Safeguards sheet backing up Notebook and, 237 creating Notebooks and, 248 floating documents and, 97, 178, 187 restoring Notebook after booting and, 138 setting alarm and, 204 setting preferences and, 194

#### INDEX

turning on warning beep and, 197 using Auto Shut Off option and, 197 zooming documents and, 100 Same case only, refining searches and, 175 saving changes, 74-75 documents, 104, 236 renaming before, 75 scratch out, gesture profile for, 60 screen caring for, 273 cleaning, 273 learning to write on, 116 screen layouts, choosing, 199 scroll arrows, described, 96 scroll handle described, 95 scrolling documents and, 96 scrolling described, 8 documents, 93-96 gestures for, 39 scroll margin, 95 gestures in, 40 scrolling documents and, 96 SCSI hard drive, connecting, 267. See also hard disk SCSI-II to SCSI-I connector cable, using hard drives and, 267 Search, finding text and, 170 Search category pop-up list, Document Only, 173 search direction, setting, 173–174 searches defining, 173-175 refining, 175 search range, setting, 173-174 Second, setting time and, 195 Seconds category Displayed, 195 Not Displayed, 195 Section Create menu, 186 pop-up Create menu, 184 sections creating, 184

deleting, 184 described, 7, 178 grouping documents into, 184–186 illustrated, 179 moving documents into, 185 renaming, 184 transferring to and from Notebook, 224–225 See also pages; subsections section titles, illustrated, 9 seeing. See viewing Select All (Edit menu), 90, 144 selecting described, 12 text, 144-145 with press, 58 selections copying, with tap press, 63 deleting, 148 making, 12 moving, with press, 58 spell in, 61 Send (Document menu), 22, 213 sending and receiving documents and, 213 sending documents, 206-213 sentences copying between pages, 29 selecting, 144 serial options, setting, 81 serial printer connecting to directly, 260 through GO Quick Charger, 262 connectors and adapters, 261 serial printer cable. See GO Serial Printer Cable Serial sheet, 81 services changes to, 74 defined, 66 Services sheet, connecting printers and, 79 setting alarm, 204 date, 196 document options, 107 floating option, 97

306

insertion point in boxed pads, 59 in text, 58 margins, 157 options, gestures for, 39 preferences, 194-199 printer options, 81-82 print options, for embedded documents, 109 response time, 196 search direction, 173-174 search range, 173-174 serial options, 81 tabs, 160 time, 195 zoom preference, 100 setting up, 254-273 printers, 79-82 shape, writing pad, 133 shocks, 273 shortcut for copying to home, 75 for creating handwriting profiles, dictionaries, or preference sets, 72 Show (Borders & Controls category), 109 Show category Cork Margin, 250 Menu Line, 250 Show Hidden Text (View sheet), 163 Show Hidden Text pop-up menu, Yes, 163 Show menu Button, 179, 180 Date, 180, 182, 221 described, 178 finding out more about documents and, 180 finding out more about what's on disks and, 221 Icon, 180 Size, 180, 182, 221, 242 Tab Box, 180, 190 Type, 180, 182 using, 180 Show option, changing display and, 203 Show Special Characters pop-up menu, Yes, 163 Shut Off After category, using Auto Shut Off option and, 197 Signature Pad (Insert menu), 167 signatures, adding to documents, 167

single character pad getting, 126 translating handwriting and, 122 size icon, changing, 200 writing pad, 133 Size, described, 67 Size (Show menu), 180, 182, 221, 242 Size (Sort menu), 221, 242 smaller, making objects, 15 small-to-large adapter. See SCSI-II to SCSI-I connector cable software keyboard described, 134 editing text in edit pads and, 151 See also keyboard; Keyboard sorting Table of Contents, 182 Sort menu By Date, 182 By Name, 182 By Page, 182 By Size, 182 By Type, 182 Date, 221 finding out more about what's on disks and, 221 Name, 221 Size, 221, 242 sorting Table of Contents and, 182 Type, 221 Space After (Paragraph sheet), 158 Space Before (Paragraph sheet), 158 spaces inserting, 124, 125, 149 in text, 148 spacing line, changing, 158 paragraph, changing, 158 spell, gesture profile for, 61 Spell (Edit menu), 165 Spell dialog, 165 spelling, checking, 165-166 spilled liquids, 273 starburst, 11, 34 Start From category pop-up list, Beginning, 174

Start From field, 72 starting new lines, paragraphs, or pages, 161 static electricity, 273 stationery, 87 adding, to Create menu, 88 backing up, 91 creating, 89-90 customized, creating, 89-90 deleting, 92 described, 84 Disk Manager, creating, 223 letterhead, 211 purging, 92 renaming, 91 Stationery (icon), 20, 87. See also Bookshelf Stationery notebook, 84 managing, 91-92 using to create documents, 87-88 Status finding text and, 170 replacing text and, 172 storing, 273 style of edit pads, changing, 130 of writing pads changing, 130 choosing, 128-133 Style, changing icon size and, 200 styles, copying, 162 styling text, 154-156 directly, 154-155 with Text sheet, 156 subsections, creating, 186. See also pages; sections symbol fonts, 77 system font. See fonts

## **T**

tab, gesture profile for, 61 Tab (Insert menu), 160 Tab Box (Show menu), 180, 190 Table of Contents, 6, 84 booting and, 246 described, 7, 178 export in, 49 frozen documents and, 245

gestures in, 40 printing documents and, 210 renaming documents from, 103 restarting and, 244 seeing what's in Notebook and, 179 selecting titles on, 12 sending and receiving documents and, 213 sorting, 182 turning into control panel, 249–250 tabs described, 7 illustrated, 6, 9 setting, 160 See also Contents tab; labels; Notebook tabs tab stops. See tabs Tab Stops sheet, setting tabs and, 160 tap gesture profile for, 62 to select characters, 144 tap press, gesture profile for, 63 Tap to Align Pen category (Pen sheet), 123 temperature, 273 text adding, 147 in boxed writing pads, editing, 38 copying, 152-153 gestures for, 36 deleting, 148 gestures for, 36 in documents, editing, 37-38 editing, 144-167 in edit pads, 149 in fields, 150-151 in labels and document titles, 150 in edit pads, editing, 38 finding, 170-175 formatting, 144–167 inserting spaces in, 148 insert space in, 52 magnifying, 164 moving, 152-153 gestures for, 36 pigtail in, 57 positioning, 159 replacing, 170–175 in ruled writing pads, editing, 38 selecting, 144-145 with press, 58

setting insertion point in, with press, 58 setting options for, gestures for, 39 styling, 154-156 directly, 154–155 with Text sheet, 156 typing onto pages, 134 viewing, 163-164 in writing pad, correcting by typing, 135 text fields, described, 26 Text sheet creating customized stationery and, 89 displaying, 24 styling text with, 156 tiled, described, 251 tiled indexes, creating, 251-252 time, setting, 195. See also Clock Time Format, setting time and, 195 timeout, described, 123, 196 Timeout category (Preferences), 34 Timeouts sheet setting preferences and, 194 setting response time and, 196 translating handwriting and, 123 Time sheet setting preferences and, 194 setting time and, 195 Time Zone, setting time and, 195 time zones, changing, 195 tips on navigating and using documents, 249-252 on writing in pads, 119-120 Title & Info sheet Active Size, 181 Filed Size, 181 renaming documents and, 102 using Document sheet and, 181 title line creating customized indexes and, 251 document, gestures in, 39 spell in, 61 turning Table of Contents into control panel and, 250 titles document editing text in, 150 illustrated, 9, 179

308

section, illustrated, 9 selecting, 12 tools, embedding, 106 Tools, 18–19 connecting printers and, 79 See also Bookshelf; Clock; Disk Manager; Handwriting Customization; Keyboard; Letter Practice; Personal Dictionary; Printers **TOPS** FlashCard connecting to directly, 269 through GO Quick Charger, 270 connecting to PCs and, 268-270 transferring documents, 224-227 documents between disks, 226-227 documents and sections to and from Notebook, 224-225 translating handwriting, 122-123 translations correcting, 124-125 with Proof sheet, 125 in writing pad, 124 transporting, 273 Travel Charger. See GO Travel Charger triple tap gesture profile for, 63 to select sentences, 144 turning to pages, 187-188 turning on warning beep, 197 Turn to (View menu), 188 Type (Show menu), 180, 182 Type (Sort menu), 221 Type pop-up list, 80 typing, correcting text in writing pad by, 135 typing text onto pages, 134

## U

underline gesture profile for, 64 styling text directly and, 155 underscore symbol, correcting translations in writing pad and, 124 Unrecognized Character pop-up list, correcting translations in writing pad and, 124 unrecognized/mistranslated letters, correcting, 124 Update from Home (Home menu), 74 updating from home volume, 75 upper case gesture profile for, 64 printing in, 121 styling text directly and, 155 Upper Case Only (Handwriting sheet), 138 Upper Case Only (Writing Style category pop-up list), 121 users, multiple, 141, 247–248 *Using PenPoint*, using, 2–3 utilities deactivating, 76–77 installing from disk, 68–70 personalized, creating, 71–73

## II V

viewing Handwriting Installer sheet, 67 text, 163-164 View menu Bring to, 188 Collapse, 179, 221 Expand, 179, 221 finding out more about what's on disks and, 221 Refresh, 219 Turn to, 188 View sheet magnifying text and, 164 Show Hidden Text, 163 viewing text and, 163 volume(s) described, 66, 216 home changing, 78 saving changes to, 74 updating from, 75 See also disk(s) Volume menu About, 221, 223 Copy Contents, 228, 229 Duplicate, 228 Eject & Remember, 227 Format, 235 Volume sheet, finding out more about what's on disks and, 221

#### W

warm booting. See booting warning beep, turning on, 197 words adding, 147 to dictionary, 166 deleting, 148 replacing, 149 selecting, 12, 144 writing in boxed pads, 120 in Notebook, 116–141 in pads, tips on, 119-120 in ruled-boxed pads, 131-132 in ruled pads, 120, 129 on screen, learning to, 116 using keyboard, 134–135 writing pad(s) boxed, 38 changing style of, 130 choosing size and shape, 133 choosing style of, 128-133 correcting text in by typing, 135 correcting translations in, 124 embedded, 126 getting, 126-127 pop-up, 126 printing in, 117-121 ruled, 38 writing in, tips on, 119-120 See also boxed pads; ruled-boxed pads; ruled pads Writing Pad pop-up list Boxed, 128 Ruled, 129 Ruled-Boxed, 131 Writing Style category pop-up list, Upper Case Only, 121 ■ X, Y, Z

Year, setting date and, 196 zoom, described, 100 zooming documents, 100–101 Zooming Documents Allowed, 238 backing up Notebook and, 237 zooming documents and, 100 zoom preference, setting, 100

## GO CORPORATION

950 Tower Lane

14th Floor

Ð

Foster City, CA 94404